



First-principles Studies of Novel Two-dimensional Materials and Their Physical Properties

Eerste-principes Studies van nieuwe tweedimensionale materialen en hun fysische eigenschappen

Proefschrift voorgelegd tot het behalen van de graad van doctor in de wetenschappen aan de Universiteit Antwerpen te verdedigen door

Yierpan Aierken

Supervisor: Prof. François M. Peeters

Advisors: Dr. Ortwin Leenaerts

Dr. Deniz Çakır

Department of Physics, University of Antwerp

Antwerp, Belgium

October 2017

Members of the Jury:**Chairman**

Prof. Dr. Dirk Lamoen, Universiteit Antwerpen, Belgium

Supervisor

Prof. Dr. François Peeters, Universiteit Antwerpen, Belgium

Members

Prof. Dr. Sandra Van Aert, Universiteit Antwerpen, Belgium

Prof. Dr. Michel Houssa, The Katholieke Universiteit Leuven, Belgium

Contact Information:

Yierpan Aierken

G.U. 212

Groenenborgerlaan 171

2020 Antwerpen

Belgium

yierpan.aierken@uantwerpen.be

Research units:

CMT
Condensed Matter Theory
University of Antwerp

Funding agency:

Fonds Wetenschappelijk Onderzoek
Vlaanderen
Opening new horizons

*I would like to dedicate this thesis
to my loving parents Arkin and Perwin,
to my beloved wife Adila,
to my cherished sons Efran and Wildan.*

Declaration

I hereby declare that except where specific reference is made to the work of others, the contents of this dissertation are original and have not been submitted in whole or in part for consideration for any other degree or qualification in this, or any other university. This dissertation is my own work and contains nothing which is the outcome of work done in collaboration with others, except as specified in the text and Acknowledgements. This dissertation contains fewer than 65,000 words including bibliography, footnotes, tables and equations and has fewer than 100 figures.

Yierpan Aierken
October 2017

Acknowledgements

I would like to express my utmost gratitude to Professor Francois Peeters for giving me the opportunity to work in the condensed matter theory (CMT) group at the University of Antwerp. I truly appreciate both his academical and financial support during my PhD study, without which this thesis would not have been completed. I would like to thank Dr. Ortwin Leenaerts and Dr. Deniz Çakır for their guidance in various of the practical aspects of this work. I have learned a lot from their expertise in the field of first-principles calculations. I would also like to thank all the professors, students and administrative staff in the CMT group for their help in every possible way during my PhD study. Finally, I would like to thank my family for being supportive all the time.

Abstract

This thesis is a collection of works aimed at exploring the physical properties of novel two-dimensional (2D) materials using advanced first-principles calculations in the framework of density functional theory (DFT). 2D materials have an atomic thickness. Because of this reduction of the dimensions, quantum confinement effects will have an important influence on the properties of the material. The field of 2D materials is expanding with the continued introduction of new members and the new phenomena they bring. DFT is a powerful tool that can be used to probe and measure these exciting materials and their properties.

By performing advanced DFT calculations, this thesis proposes several new 2D materials. These materials are stable and have distinct properties as compared to their bulk form. The discovery of new 2D materials involves separating known layered materials in their bulk form into monolayers or rationally designing materials with tailored properties at the atomic level. Full characterizations are given to introduce these new materials to the 2D materials community.

In addition to the basic properties of these materials that can be obtained by a single step DFT calculation, this thesis increases the level of the characterization by introducing additional approximations on top of the DFT calculations. This usually requires several calculations to be done for different conditions, e.g. mechanical strains, to find the relation between these results. By doing so, the properties related to more dynamical processes of the materials can be understood.

This thesis also introduces several effective ways to modify the determined properties. Questions like "What is the effect of the interlayer interaction for a few-layer system" and "How a particular material responds to the application of strain?" are answered throughout the thesis.

Table of contents

List of figures	xv
List of tables	xxiii
List of abbreviations	xxv
1 Introduction	1
1.1 Graphene	3
1.1.1 History	3
1.1.2 Physical properties	6
1.2 Post-graphene materials and their general properties	7
1.2.1 Functionalized graphene	8
1.2.2 Group IV 2D materials	10
1.2.3 2D from layered materials	11
1.3 1D from 2D: nanotubes and nanoribbons	14
1.4 Synthesis methods	16
2 Computational methods	19
2.1 Theory	19
2.1.1 Density Functional Theory	19
2.1.2 Exchange-correlation functional	23
2.2 Implementation	27
2.2.1 Software Packages	30
3 General physical properties of 2D materials	33
3.1 Structural properties	33
3.1.1 Layered structure: from multi- to monolayer	33

3.1.2	sp ⁿ hybridization	37
3.2	Electronic properties	39
3.2.1	Graphene	39
3.2.2	Dirac cone and symmetry	41
3.2.3	Examples: 2D-hBN, 2D-MoS ₂ and graphene	42
3.3	Vibrational properties	43
3.3.1	Example: 2D-MoS ₂	44
3.3.2	Dynamic stability from phonon dispersion	46
3.4	Mechanical properties	47
3.4.1	Examples: graphene, 2D-hBN and 2D-MoS ₂	48
3.4.2	Mechanical stability: Born stability criteria	49
4	Results of Physical Properties Calculations in Novel 2D Materials	51
4.1	Thermal properties of black and blue phosphorene	51
4.1.1	Introduction	51
4.1.2	Thermal expansion and QHA	53
4.1.3	Computational details	56
4.1.4	Phonon modes and dispersion	56
4.1.5	Temperature-dependent thermal properties	57
4.1.6	Summary	60
4.2	Piezoelectric properties of 2D-TMDs and 2D-TMDOs	60
4.2.1	Introduction	60
4.2.2	Piezoelectric constants	61
4.2.3	Computational details	63
4.2.4	Accurate band gaps from HSE06 hybrid functional	64
4.2.5	Elastic constants	65
4.2.6	Piezoelectric stress/strain coefficients	67
4.2.7	Importance of internal relaxation	69
4.2.8	Summary	70
4.3	Magnetic properties of penta-hexa-graphene	71
4.3.1	Introduction	71
4.3.2	Computational details	72
4.3.3	Bond hybridization and magnetic moment	73
4.3.4	Summary	76

4.4	Lithium battery related properties of MXenes/ graphene heterostructure	77
4.4.1	Introduction	77
4.4.2	Computational details	78
4.4.3	heterostructure stacking types	79
4.4.4	Single Li intercalation and its binding energy	81
4.4.5	Effect of Li concentration	84
4.4.6	Electrochemical properties	87
4.4.7	Diffusion properties	88
4.4.8	Summary	91
5	Results of Physical Properties Modification in Novel 2D materials	93
5.1	Number of layers: Few-layer of Calcium hydroxide	93
5.1.1	Introduction	93
5.1.2	Computational details	95
5.1.3	Experimental measurements	96
5.1.4	Structure properties	98
5.1.5	Electronic properties	102
5.1.6	Mechanical properties	105
5.1.7	Vibrational properties	106
5.1.8	Summary	107
5.2	Number of layers: Few-layer of pentasilicene	108
5.2.1	Introduction	108
5.2.2	Computational details	108
5.2.3	Monolayer pentasilicene	109
5.2.4	Multilayers of pentasilicene structures	110
5.2.5	Stabilities	114
5.2.6	Relative phase stability	117
5.2.7	Electronic properties	118
5.2.8	Summary	121
5.3	Mechanical strain: Carrier mobility enhancement in TiS_3 mono- layer with strain	121
5.3.1	Introduction	121
5.3.2	Computational details	122

5.3.3	Unstrained system	123
5.3.4	Dynamical stability under mechanical strain	126
5.3.5	Bond lengths and band gap under mechanical strain . .	130
5.3.6	Effective mass, DPC and mobility under mechanical strain	132
5.3.7	Summary	136
5.4	Heterostructures: Electrical transport in 1T/2H/1T MoS ₂ lateral heterostructure	136
5.4.1	Introduction	137
5.4.2	Computational details	139
5.4.3	Structures	140
5.4.4	Transmission spectra and DOS	142
5.4.5	The effect of doping	143
5.4.6	Summary	149
5.5	Defect induction: Faceted blue phosphorene nanotube formed by line defects	149
5.5.1	Introduction	149
5.5.2	Computational details	150
5.5.3	Rolled PNT	152
5.5.4	Defect lines	154
5.5.5	Defect-induced faceted PNTs	156
5.5.6	Electronic properties	161
5.5.7	Comparison to multiphase faceted PNT	163
5.5.8	Summary	164
6	Summary and outlook	167
Bibliography		171
List of Publications		197
Curriculum vitae		199

List of figures

1.1	Graphene related publications and patents during the last decade	2
1.2	Relation between graphite, graphene, fullerene and nanotube .	4
1.3	Graphene lattice and band structure.	7
1.4	Atomic and electronic structure of graphane	9
1.5	Graphite fluoride to fluorographene	9
1.6	Group IVA 2D materials	10
1.7	Layered hexagonal structures of h-BN	12
1.8	Layered structures of TMDs	13
1.9	Band structure evolution of MoS ₂ from bulk to single layer . . .	14
1.10	Chiral vector and different types of nanotubes as obtained by rolling them up in different directions	15
1.11	Graphene production setups	16
1.12	The growth of graphene on SiC wafer	17
1.13	An ultra-large-area graphene film	18
2.1	Comparison of different electronic structure calculation methods	20
2.2	Jacob's ladder for DFT approximations	25
2.3	The mean absolute error (MAE) of the equilibrium lattice constant and band gap of different functionals	26
2.4	Schematic illustration of the relation between E_g and E_g^{KS} . . .	27
3.1	Energy-momentum dispersion of graphene from graphite	34
3.2	The atomic structures of monolayer and layered bulk MoS ₂ . . .	36
3.3	Three types of sp hybridized orbitals	38
3.4	The formation of sp ² σ and p _z π double bond	40
3.5	Graphene lattice and its Brillouin zone	41

3.6	Possibility of the formation of Dirac cones in various lattice systems	41
3.7	Electronic band structures of 2D-hBN, 2D-MoS ₂ and graphene .	42
3.8	The phonon modes at the Γ point and the dispersion of MoS ₂ .	45
3.9	Imaginary frequencies are shown as negative frequencies in a phonon dispersion plot	46
3.10	A structure at the convex and the concave of the PES	46
4.1	Black and blue phosphorene structures	52
4.2	Schematic illustration of the relation between asymmetric interatomic potential and thermal expansion.	54
4.3	TEC of graphite and graphene calculated using QHA (continuous line) and experimental result for graphite (points). Image source: [153]	55
4.4	Calculated phonon dispersions for pristine (a) black and (b) blue P. (c) Optical phonon modes together with their frequencies (in units of cm ⁻¹) at the Γ point and irreducible representations for black P and blue P.	57
4.5	(a) Lattice constants and (b) TEC as a function of temperature. Here, ZZ and AC are denoted for the zigzag and armchair directions, respectively. (c) TEC of monolayer MoS ₂ for comparison from Ref. [155].	58
4.6	Thermal properties variations of phosphorene with temperature	59
4.7	Mechanism of direct piezoelectric effect. Image source: [171] . .	62
4.8	Top and side views of MX ₂ where M= Cr, Mo, W, Ti, Zr, Hf, Sn and X=O, S, Se, Te. P denotes the direction of the polarization. Piezoelectric calculations are done in a rectangular cell.	64
4.9	The calculated PBE-GGA and HSE06 E _{gap} values for TMDs and TMDOs. Here, the white * sign indicates that it is a direct band gap material.	65
4.10	(a) Clamped-ion and (b) relaxed-ion polarization change under applied uniaxial strain (ε_{11}) along the x direction for the selected 2D-TMDs and 2D-TMDOs structures. Piezoelectric coefficient is determined from the slope of the curves.	67
4.11	The calculated clamped and relaxed-ion (a) piezoelectric stress (e_{11}) and (b) piezoelectric strain (d_{11}) coefficients.	68

4.12	Atomic structure of a 2×2 supercell of monolayer ph-graphene. (a) Top view with hexagonal and pentagonal rings marked with red and yellow color, respectively; (b) Side view of the buckled structure. (Visualisation using VESTA [203])	72
4.13	Bond angles in the unit cell of monolayer ph-graphene.	73
4.14	Phonon dispersion relation of monolayer ph-graphene.	74
4.15	Electronic band structure of monolayer ph-graphene. The charge densities at the VBM and CBM in the unit cell are shown as in- sets. The arrows on the atoms indicate the orientation of their magnetic moments.	75
4.16	An example structure of mono- Ti_2CO_2 presenting in (a) top view, (b) side view and (c) tilted view. (d) Simplified example structure of $\text{M}_2\text{CX}_2+\text{Gr}$ heterostructure in ground state stacking.	79
4.17	The optimized locations of single Li atoms in different structures and the definition of interlayer distance d , which ignores the Li atom layer..	82
4.18	The locations of Li atoms intercalation between $\text{Ti}_2\text{CO}_2+\text{Gr}$ het- erostructure as an example.	83
4.19	The average binding energy (a) and the average charge transger (b) of Li atoms and the voltage profile of $\text{M}_2\text{CX}_2+\text{Gr}$ heterostruc- ture (c) as a function of Li concentration.	86
4.20	Initially guessed and final resulting Lithium diffusion paths be- tween $\text{Ti}_2\text{CO}_2+\text{G}$ heterostructure.	89
4.21	The top view and the side view of Li diffusion paths along the low- est energy diffusion paths in Ti_2CO_2 related systems as examples.	89
4.22	Energy profiles of the Li diffusions in different systems composed of (a) $\text{Sc}_2\text{C}(\text{OH})_2$, (b) Ti_2CO_2 and (c) V_2CO_2 along the lowest en- ergy diffusion paths as indicated in Fig. 4.21.	90
5.1	Atomic structure of bulk $\text{Ca}(\text{OH})_2$: (a) tilted view, (b) top view of one layer.	94

5.2 (a) Optical image of the crystal structure and (b) Raman spectrum measured using 488 nm laser in the low and the high frequency region. The fundamental phonon branches located at the low frequency (100-400 cm ⁻¹ range) and the high frequency (3620 cm ⁻¹) are associated with the OH stretching mode. (c) XRD measurements	97
5.3 Different stacked bilayers (bottom layer is blurred) and their energy difference with respect to the AA stacking of Ca(OH) ₂ , i.e. $\Delta E = E_{ABX} - E_{AA}$, (X=1,2,...,5). Energies are given per formula of Ca(OH) ₂ . Blue, green and red circles are for Ca atom, upper hydroxyl group and lower hydroxyl group, respectively. For clarity, the bottom layer is shifted slightly.	101
5.4 Interlayer interaction energy per formula of AA-stacked bilayer Ca(OH) ₂ . Blue and red curves are for GGA calculations without and with vdW correction, respectively.	102
5.5 (a) and (d) are the Band structures, (b) and (e) are the partial DOS and (c) and (g) are the band and <i>k</i> -point decomposed charge densities of the bulk (c) and monolayer (g) Ca(OH) ₂ , respectively. The charge density are the band edges indicated in (a) and (d), isovalue are kept constant. (f) Band structure around Γ point is shown with (dashed line) and without (solid line) spin orbit coupling.	103
5.6 Two lowest conduction band charge density of monolayer and bilayer Ca(OH) ₂ at the Γ point.	105
5.7 Phonon dispersion of monolayer Ca(OH) ₂	106
5.8 (a) Side view and (b) top view of the atomic structure, (c) phonon spectrum and (d) two vibration modes with imaginary frequency of monolayer penta-silicene. Visualization of vibration modes is done with the V_Sim package [276].	109

5.9 Schematic illustration of the four stacking types for bilayer p-Si. The colors of the symbols correspond to those of the monolayer in Fig. 5.8(a) and Fig. 5.8(b). The bottom layer in the bilayer is blurred for clarity. The arrow represents translation and the angle represents the rotation of the top layer with respect to the bottom layer.	111
5.10 Atomic structure of the 2×2 supercell of few-layer p-Si. The number of atomic layers in the bulk structure is fixed to four for comparison (i.e. $2 \times 2 \times 4$ and $2 \times 2 \times 2$ supercells for AA and AB, stacked bulk p-Si). (Visualisation using VESTA [203]).	112
5.11 Phonon spectra of different-stacked few-layer p-Si.	115
5.12 The cohesive energy of monolayer and AA and AB _r ^d stacked bilayer p-Si as a function of time at a temperature of 100 K under NpT-ensemble.	116
5.13 Top and side views of the atomic structures of the 2×2 supercell of the three examined hexagonal silicene bilayers.	117
5.14 Electronic band structure of AA stacked few-layer and bulk p-Si, and a schematic of the first Brillouin zone.	119
5.15 Electronic band structures of AB _r ^d stacked few-layer and AB _r stacked bulk p-Si. The results for the monolayer are shown for comparison.	120
5.16 The charge distribution of CBM and VBM in AB _r ^d stacked few-layer and AB _r stacked bulk p-Si. The results for the monolayer are shown for comparison.	120
5.17 (a) Top and (b) tilted views of a 2×2 supercell of monolayer TiS ₃ . Two crystallographic directions (where the strain is applied or the mobility is calculated) are shown with red and green arrows.	124
5.18 (a) The site and orbital-projected band structure (calculated using PBE functional) of the unstrained TiS ₃ monolayer. Decomposed charge density of CMB (b) and VBM (c) at the Γ point are presented.	125
5.19 Calculated elastic modulus along the <i>a</i> and <i>b</i> directions under mechanical strain.	127
5.20 Calculated phonon spectrum of (a) pristine monolayer TiS ₃ and that under strain (b-g).	129

5.21 Variation of bond lengths with strain. Color of the curves matches with the color of the bonds in the structure depicted in the inset.	130
5.22 Variation of the band edges with respect to vacuum with strain.	131
5.23 Variation of the effective mass of electrons and holes along the <i>a</i> and <i>b</i> directions at the Γ -point with strain.	132
5.24 Variation of the (a) DPC (E_d) with strain.	134
5.25 Variation of the mobility (μ) with strain.	135
5.26 (a) and (d) vertical and (c) and (d) lateral WS ₂ /MoS ₂ heterostructures. Image adapted from: [310]	137
5.27 Device models where the 2H phase of MoS ₂ is sandwiched between the metallic MoS ₂ electrodes: (a) the α -device, (b) the β -device, and (c) the γ -device. For the α and β devices, the interfaces between metallic and semiconducting MoS ₂ have an armchair termination while a zigzag termination in the γ -device.	140
5.28 The zero bias transmission spectra for (a) the α device, (b) the β device, and (c) the γ device.	142
5.29 pDOS of the valence and conduction band of 1H-MoS ₂ as a function of electron concentration for the β -device. Here, we only show the PDOS of the central part of 1H-MoS ₂ where the effect of the interface is minimal. The Fermi level marks the zero energy. Electron concentrations (per formula unit of 1T _d phase) are given.	144
5.30 Variation of Schottky barrier for the β -device as a function of electron concentration (per formula unit of 1T _d part) for both electrons (red) and holes (black).	145
5.31 pDOS of the valence and conduction band of the central part of 1H-MoS ₂ for Re and Ta doped devices. In the top figure, gray region highlights the central part of 1H phase for which PDOS is calculated. For comparison, PDOS of bare device is also shown. .	146
5.32 pDOS of 1H-MoS ₂ at the different position on 1H-MoS ₂ . The Fermi level marks the zero energy.	147

5.33 Self-consistent EP profile along the interface of armchair (a) pristine and (b) doped 1T _d -1H-1T _d MoS ₂ heterostructure. The right (left) 1T _d MoS ₂ is doped with Re (Ta). Blue curve denotes the plane average potential along the heterostructure.	148
5.34 Monolayer structures of black (first row) and blue (second row) phosphorenes. Atoms are colored according to the names of the allotropes, and are lighter in color for the bottom layer of the buckled structure. The black boxes indicate the unit cell of each structure.	151
5.35 Rolled structures of α -PNT and β -PNT seen from the axial direction. The subscripts indicate the directions of the chiral vector, i.e. ac for armchair and zz for zigzag.	152
5.36 Strain energy versus radius of rolled nanotubes. The curves correspond to aR^{-b} fits, where the fitting parameters are listed in table 5.8.	153
5.37 Different types of defect for (a) armchair and (b) zigzag directions. The dark and light shaded atoms indicate that they are buckled up or down, respectively. Effective location of the defect is represented by a thick black line. Overlined defect name refer to the same defect but with an opposite opening direction of the angle. (c) and (d) are tilted view of the C and H defect lines incorporated in the β phase.	155
5.38 Selected examples of defect-induced faceted PNTs	157
5.39 The formation energy E_f^t of armchair DIF-PNTs compared with the strain energy E_S^β of β_{ac} -PNT (black curve with circle symbols).	158
5.40 The formation energy E_f^t of zigzag DIF-PNTs compared with the strain energy E_S^β of β_{zz} -PNT (black curve with circle symbols).	159
5.41 Armchair DIF-PNTs band gaps compared with rolled β_{ac} -PNT (black curve with circle symbols).	161
5.42 Band structure (along defect line) and PDOS of selected DIF-PNTs, (a) for C^{av} and (b) for G^{zz} . Insets: Charge density at CBM and VBM.	162
5.43 Zigzag DIF-PNTs band gaps compared with rolled β_{zz} -PNT (black curve with circle symbols).	163

List of tables

3.1	Mechanical properties of graphene, 2D-hBN and 2D-MoS ₂	49
4.1	Calculated clamped and relaxed-ion elastic constants (in units of N/m), Young modulus Y (in units of N/m) and Poisson's ratio ν .	66
4.2	Orbital hybridization indices of the C atoms in ph-graphene.	74
4.3	A comparison of different MXenes systems: monolayer, bilayer, heterostructure. d is the interlayer distance and is defined as shown in Fig. 4.17. E_b is binding energy of the system with respect to its components, e.g bilayer with respect to monolayers. Only the ground state stacking of M ₂ CX ₂ +Gr is reported.	80
4.4	A comparison of different MXenes systems: monolayer, bilayer, heterostructure with Li intercalation. d is the interlayer distance and is defined as shown in Fig. 4.17. E_b^{Li} is the binding energy of a single Li atom. Only the largest binding energy of Li atom is reported, i.e. ground state adsorption site. L_{min} is the shortest bond length of a Li atom with others. e is the charge transfer from a Li atom to a heterostructure. For the consistency of the Li concentrations, all monolayer and bilayer system use the same dimensions as in the corresponding heterostructures. Three different size of bi-Gr are presented to compare with the heterostructures with corresponding size of Gr.	85
5.1	Comparison of calculated results for structures parameter of bulk Ca(OH) ₂ with experimental results and with theoretical results from other reference: lattice constants a and c , volume V and c/a ratio.	99

5.2 Calculated results for different structures of $\text{Ca}(\text{OH})_2$: lattice constants a , vertical shift of O and H atom c_O c_H , Ca-O and O-H bond length, energy band gap E_{gap} , cohesive energy per atom E_{coh} , charge transfer from Ca atom to O atom ΔQ , in-plane Young's modulus E_{xx} , E_{yy} , in-plane Poisson's ratio ν_{xy} , in-plane shear modulus G_{xy} and in-plane stiffness C . For comparison, theoretical calculation on same quantities of BN are shown in the last row.	100
5.3 The cohesive energy (E_{coh}), the interlayer binding distance (d_{inter}), the interlayer binding energy (E_{inter}), number of interlayer bonds (N_b) and energy per bond (E_{bond}) of the four possible stacking types of bilayer p-Si. The interlayer binding energy per unit cell is defined as $E_{\text{inter}} = E_{\text{bi}} - 2E_{\text{mono}}$	110
5.4 The layer (space) group for few-layer (bulk) systems. The lattice constant (a), the interlayer distance (d_{inter}), the nearest-neighbor bond length range ($d_{\text{min/max}}$), the cohesive energy (E_{coh}), and the band gap (PBE) of few-layer and bulk p-Si.	113
5.5 Mechanical properties of AB_r^d bilayer p-Si	117
5.6 The interlayer distance d_{inter} , the nearest-neighbor bond length range ($d_{\text{min/max}}$) and the cohesive energy per atom E_{coh} of the most stable hexagonal bilayer silicene and bilayer p-Si.	118
5.7 The electron (hole) effective mass (m^*), the elastic modulus (C), the DPC (E_d), and the electron (hole) mobility (μ) of phosphorene and monolayer TiS_3	126
5.8 Fitting coefficients for the strain energy $E_S = aR^{-b}$ of rolled PNTs shown in Fig. 5.36.	154
5.9 The formation energy E_f^l , and the kink angle θ of the different defect lines that are illustrated in Fig. 5.37.	156
5.10 Fitting coefficients for the formation energy $E_f^t = aR^{-b}$ of DIF-PNTs.	160

List of abbreviations

2D two-dimensional

3D three-dimensional

AEMHs alkaline earth metal hydroxides

CBM conduction band minimum

cNEB climbing-image nudge elastic band

CVD Chemical vapor deposition

DFPT density functional perturbation theory

DOS density of states

DPC deformation potential constant

EP electrostatic potential

FWHM full width at half maximum

GGA generalized gradient approximation

HF Hatree-Fock

HSE Heyd-Scuseria-Ernzerhof

LDA local density approximation

MAE mean absolute error

NEGF non-equilibrium Green's functions

- PAW projected-augmented wave
- pDOS partial density of states
- PES potential energy surface
- PNT phosphorene nanotubes
- QHA quasi-harmonic approximation
- SOC spin-orbit coupling
- TEC thermal expansion coefficients
- TMDs Transition metal dichalcogenides
- VASP Vienna *Ab initio* Simulation Package
- VBM valence band maximum
- vdW van der Waals

Chapter 1

Introduction

A new field of research related to both material science and condensed matter physics has been formed since the synthesis of graphene in 2004 [1, 2]. Graphene is a sheet of carbon atoms in a crystal form having a single atomic thickness. Given the thin plane-like structural nature of this type of materials, one refers to it as 2D materials. The synthesis itself together with the phenomenal properties of graphene have led to a Nobel Prize in physics awarded to Andre Geim and Konstantin Novoselov in 2010 [3]. Since then, the field is expanding with the involvement of researchers not only from the young community, but also from experts who have been working on graphene-related materials like graphite, fullerenes and carbon nanotubes. As a result, research that focused on graphene and related topics is increasing with unprecedented speed, see Fig. 1.1 for the publications and the patents made in the last decade. While a part of the research has been to explore more properties of graphene itself and its applications, the other part has been concentrated on the discovery of new 2D materials. It has been evidenced from graphene that the same material having different dimensions can have different properties. For example, as compared to graphite, its monolayer graphene has superior mechanical properties and massless carriers to name a few. Therefore, many materials with hidden properties which will only manifest themselves in other dimensions are yet to be discovered.

On the other hand, with the advent of powerful supercomputer facilities, calculations that seem impossible to finish in a reasonable time now have become possible. The accuracy of such calculations is the most crucial aspect of computational physics, especially when the results are utilized to predict real

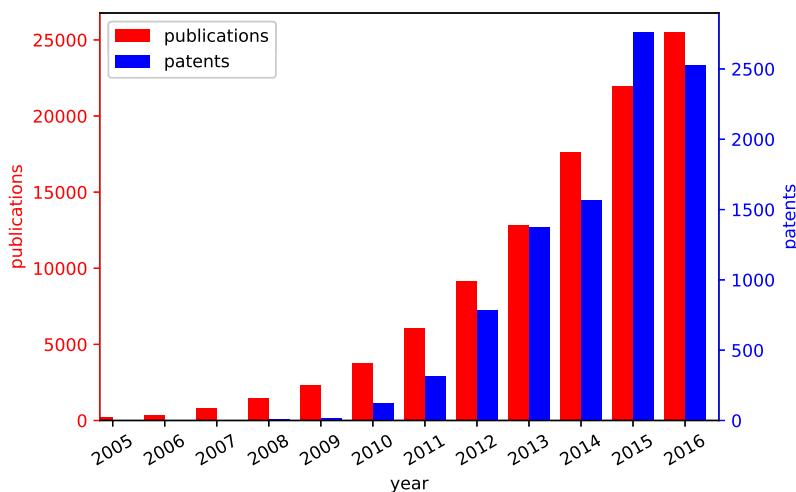


Fig. 1.1 Graphene related publications and patents during the last decade. Data source: ISI Web of Science and PATENTSCOPE.¹

material properties. To make the time spent on costly supercomputers valuable, researchers and programmers have been making important progress in order to make sure theories and their implementations are correct and the results they yield are within acceptable precision. Equipped with these tools, theoretical predictions have served well on discovering unexplored properties and applications of those materials. Moreover, detailed characterizations at atomic scale benefit the experimental results as well, or even to explain the unexpected outcomes. Considering all mentioned, it is a sound approach to apply state-of-the-art computational methods that are accompanied with high-performance supercomputer facilities to investigate the physical properties of novel 2D materials.

This thesis was initiated to this end, and it is a summary of several works which have been accomplished during my Ph.D. study. The thesis is organized as follows: For the rest of this chapter, I will first introduce graphene and some other 2D materials that were discovered right after graphene, and list, briefly, several well-known methods used to synthesize 2D materials. The following [chapter 2](#) will present the computational methods, the theory and the implementations of them in available software packages. In [chapter 3](#), I will discuss several general properties of 2D materials. The next two chapters contain the

¹Publication and patent data are obtained by searching for "graphene" in the topic field of Web of Science and the title field of PATENTSCOPE, respectively.

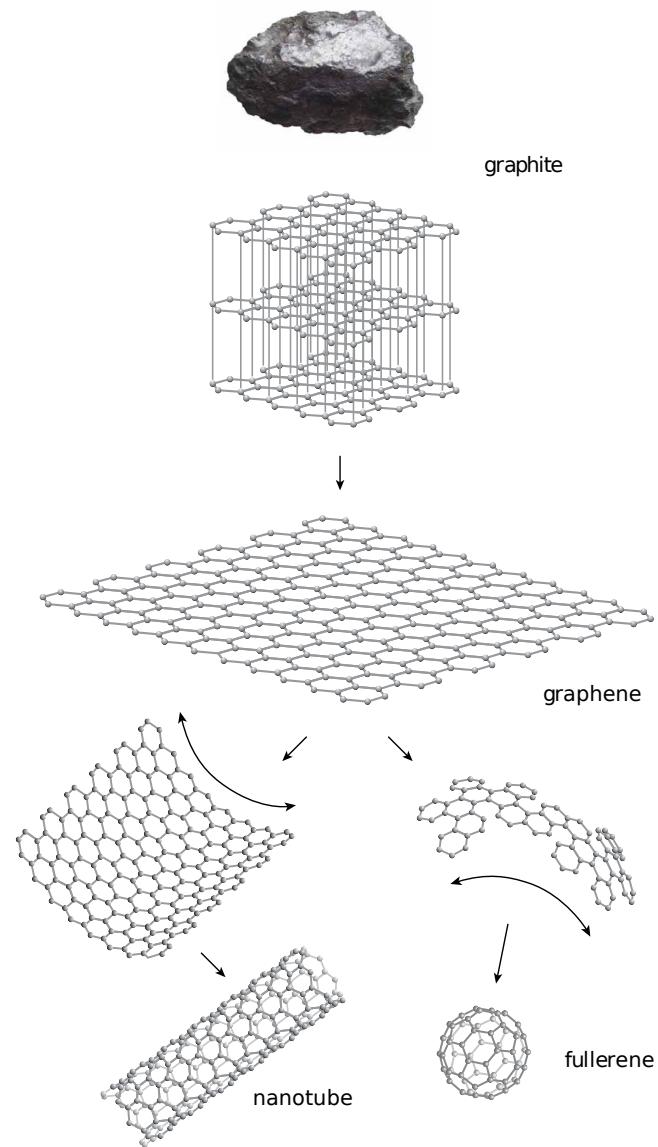
main results of the thesis. Starting from specific properties of particular novel 2D materials that are investigated in [chapter 4](#), and followed by the modification of physical properties of 2D materials in [chapter 5](#). Overlaps of materials themselves and their properties are inevitable between the different sections, yet it will be minimized such that each section will have a unique topic.

1.1 Graphene

Graphene is composed of carbon (C) atoms arranged on a honeycomb lattice in a single atomic layer. Graphite is made of vdW coupled graphene layers, see [Fig. 1.2](#). In graphite, these layers are stacked on top of another through weak physical bonds, whereas within each layer C atoms are held together by strong chemical bonds. As a result, it is possible to just isolate a single layer from graphite without damaging the layer itself.

1.1.1 History

The story of graphene can be traced back to the discovery of graphite around 1564 in England[[5](#)]. Ever since, people have been using graphite, e.g. the tip of a pencil, for writing and drawing. The black trace left behind by a pencil is actually stacks of graphite and graphene, and by chance, even a single layer of graphene can be present. Apart from being part of a pencil, graphite certainly has been holding a more important position in technology and industry due to its rich chemistry, low friction, high electrical and thermal conductivity etc. On the other hand, the synthesis of a single layer graphene seems to be discouraged by both experimental and theoretical limitations. On the experimental side, there have been attempts[[6–9](#)] to isolate graphene from graphite or even grow it on a substrate. However, they failed mostly due to the poor control of the number of layers and the difficulty to identify graphene itself. In addition to these experimental difficulties, theoretically, it was believed that strictly 2D materials should not exist because of a divergence in the size of the thermal fluctuation in 2D materials that will make them unstable [[10–12](#)]. Nevertheless, graphene was still considered as a theoretical model. For example, Wallace [[13](#)] was the



©Ari Ililiste/The Royal Swedish Academy of Sciences

Fig. 1.2 Relation of graphite, graphene, fullerene and nanotube. Image source: the Nobel prize in physics 2010 [4]

first one to study the band structure of graphene [14], and found some of the interesting properties, like a semimetallic band structure.

Although not in the form of graphene, a single atomic layer of graphite has been already seen and studied in other forms, e.g. fullerenes and nanotubes, see Fig. 1.2. These materials usually contain certain types of characteristic defects, e.g. topological defects, that make them different from graphene. Fullerene has a quasi-spherical hollow ball shape. It is composed of both six- and five-folded C rings, where the latter give positive curvature and make it possible for the surface to close. The resulting shape resembles a football[15, 16]. The Nobel prize in chemistry of 1996 was awarded to Harold W. Kroto, Robert F. Curl and Richard E. Smalley for their discovery of fullerene. Another important type of carbon allotrope is the carbon nanotube[17], which was discovered by using the arc-discharge method[16] which was originally designed to produce a large quantity of fullerenes. Despite sharing a similar production method, carbon nanotubes are actually more close to graphene than fullerene due to the absence of pentagonal C rings. A carbon nanotube can be constructed by rolling up a graphene sheet into a hollow tube as its name suggests. Carbon nanotubes are typically observed to have micrometer lengths and nanometer diameters and are either metallic or semiconducting depending on the way they are rolled up. They possess superior mechanical properties. For example, an individual nanotube has a Young's modulus of 0.64 TPa and it is 56 times stronger than a steel wire[18].

In 2004, the situation has changed completely for graphene with the successful isolation of a single layer of graphene from graphite by A. K. Geim and K. S. Novoselov at Manchester University using a simple micromechanical cleavage method. Except for a more sophisticated experimental control, the key ingredient for their success, as compared to the previous failures[6, 7], is that the Si wafer underneath the graphene made it easier to identify graphene[3]. The synthesis of graphene itself already is a ground-breaking achievement, however, what excited researchers the most is the extraordinary properties that graphene has. In the following section, I will summarize some of them to illustrate this point.

1.1.2 Physical properties

As mentioned previously, graphene is a single atomic layer of graphite. It has an interesting structure with high symmetry, and many of its properties are attributed to it. Each C atom has three neighbours to which it is chemically bonded. Because of this, C atoms are arranged in a honeycomb lattice², or a hexagonal Bravais lattice with two atoms per site, see (a) in Fig. 1.3. Graphene has a uniform bond length of 1.42\AA and uniform bond angles of 120° . The band structure which characterizes the electronic properties of graphene has been calculated by P. R. Wallace in 1947 [13]. He discovered that graphene is a semimetal with CBM and VBM that touch each other at the K and K' points in the first Brillouin zone as shown in (b) and (c) in Fig. 1.3. The energy-momentum dispersion is approximately linear in the vicinity of the K and K' points. Due to this, the electrons and holes in those states behave differently as they do in a quadratic band. This has several consequences. First of all, considering the linear energy momentum relation, particles can be regarded as zero-mass Dirac particles and they are governed by the relativistic Dirac equation[19], and they travel at a constant speed of 10^6m/s . Hence, the K and K' points are referred as Dirac points, their vicinities are called Dirac cones. Secondly, the carrier concentration can be tuned continuously from electron to hole with a perpendicular electric field[3]. Thirdly, the charge carriers in graphene can tunnel through a finite height potential without reflection if they normally incident to the barrier — Klein tunnelling[20]. Fourthly, under a particular magnetic field, a zero energy Landau level appears, and the large energy interval between the zero and the first level made it possible to observe the quantum Hall effect at room temperature [21], etc.

Graphene delivers more than just interesting electronic properties. For example, evidencing the extraordinary mechanical properties, graphene has a Young modulus of 1Tpa and intrinsic strength of 130 Gpa [23]. This makes graphene the strongest material ever measured. More than 300 times stronger than steel and four times harder than diamond. High carrier mobility is another exciting feature that is important in electronic devices. Free standing graphene without a substrate attached has been reported to have a carrier mobility of $230,000\text{ cm}^2/\text{Vs}$ at low temperature[24] and $120,000\text{ cm}^2/\text{Vs}$ at 240 Kelvin . The latter value is

²Honeycomb lattice is not a Bravais lattice.

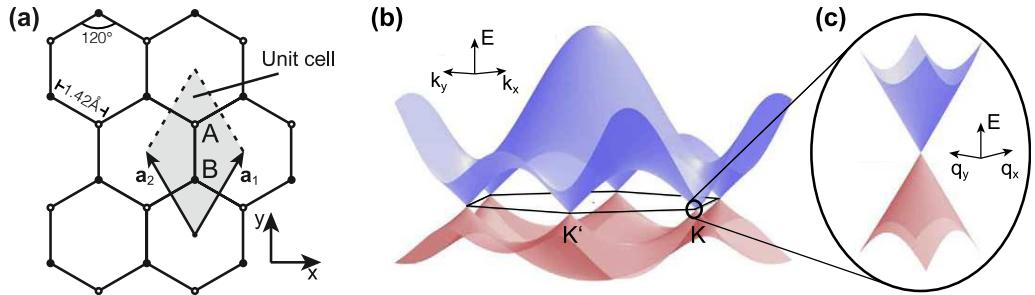


Fig. 1.3 (a) Graphene honeycomb lattice composed of A and B hexagonal Bravais sublattices. (b) Band structure of graphene where CBM and VBM touch each other only at the K and K' points. (c) Approximately linear dispersion around the K and K' points. Image source: Ref. [22]

higher than that of any known semiconductor[25]. In addition, the thermal conductivity of graphene can reach up to 5000 W/mK at room temperature, which is 20 times higher than that of copper[26]. Despite these properties, having a zero band gap strongly suppresses the potential of graphene in digital logic gates applications. This is because the current controlled by the gate bias can not be turned off completely in graphene. To overcome this, efforts to open a band gap in graphene have been made through substrate induction[27, 28], bilayer graphene[29, 30], chemical adsorption[31, 32], chemical doping[33] and quantum confinement[34, 35]. Doping and adsorption usually come with a price of reducing mobility by introducing scattering centres. In contrast, bilayer graphene and nanoribbons are thought to be promising approaches to open a band gap as well as, to a great extent, preserve graphene's superior intrinsic properties.

1.2 Post-graphene materials and their general properties

Excitements about the properties of graphene have driven the search for other 2D materials. Researchers have taken different approaches to this end. On the one hand, aiming to open a band gap in graphene, chemical functionalization of graphene has been carried out with chemical adsorption of hydrogen, fluorine and oxygen, resulting in graphane, fluorographene and graphene oxide, respectively. On the other hand, inspired by graphite's layered structure, other

layered materials are brought to the attention and efforts were undertaken to isolate a single layer of it. In this section, I will introduce some of these early post-graphene materials and their physical properties in general.

1.2.1 Functionalized graphene

Graphane

The full hydrogenation of graphene gives a 2-D hydrocarbon called graphane. It can be synthesized either by reduction of graphite and then hydrogenation of the left product (graphene, carbon nanotubes or graphite oxide) with liquid-based[36] or gas-based[37] environments. It can be also grown by chemical vapour deposition[38].

Graphane is not flat as graphene. In fact, the bonding character changed from sp^2 hybridization to sp^3 , which results into a buckled structure, see Fig. 1.4. Neighbouring H atoms are located at the different sides of the graphane plane. Among different phases of graphane, the chair structure was found to be the ground state. Other phases are metastable like boat, twist-boat and twist-boat-chair[39]. The C-C bond length in the chair structure is 1.52 Å and thus larger than that in graphene. Graphane is a semiconductor with 3.5 eV band gap in the chair form. The band gap was reported to scale almost linearly with the hydrogen coverage[40]. The 2D Young's modulus of graphane is estimated 245 N/m[41] and thus smaller than 340 N/m of graphene. The incomplete coverage of H atoms on graphene gives hydrogenated graphene. It is ferromagnetic[42], the band gap depends on the H coverage[43] and hydrogenation is reversible[31].

Fluorographene

Stronger binding between an external atom and a C atom can be realized using fluorine atoms for adsorption. Fully fluorinated graphene is called fluorographene, and it can be regarded as a single layer of graphite fluoride. In fact, sonochemical exfoliation of fluorographene from graphite fluoride is one of the ways to synthesize it, see Fig. 1.5[46]. Fluorographene has a similar structure as graphane due to the same sp^3 hybridization, and it also has different isomers where again the chair type is the ground state configuration[47]. The unit cell

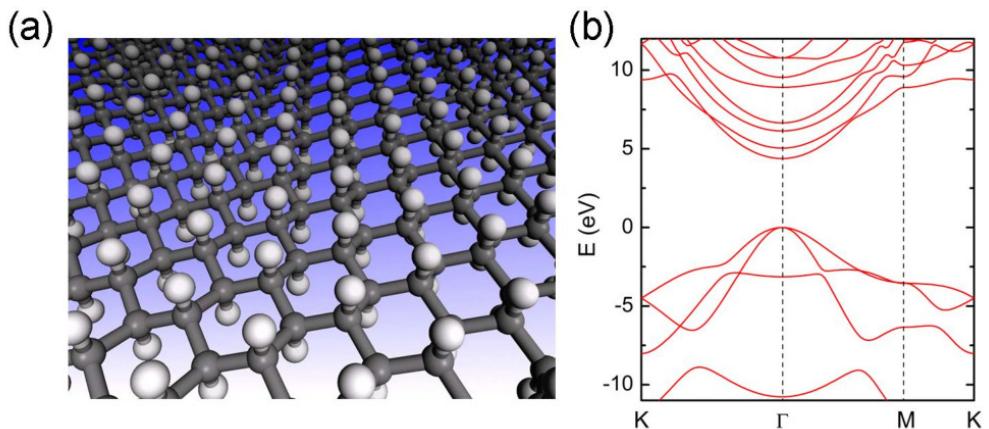


Fig. 1.4 (a)The chair structure of graphane. The white balls are the H atoms and the grey ones are the C atoms. Image source: Ref. [44] (b) Band structure of chair graphane. Image source: Ref. [45]

of fluorographene is around 1% larger than that of graphene[48]. The formation energy of fluorographene is about 0.5 eV per fluorine atom lower than that of graphane per hydrogen atom[32]. The band gap of fluorographene is larger than 3 eV as found from optical measurements[32, 48], and the band structure is similar to that of graphane with a band gap at the Γ point. The 2D Young's modulus of fluorographene is 100 N/m and the intrinsic strength is about 15 N/m. Both are more than two times smaller than the ones for graphene due to the weaker sp^3 hybridized σ bonds in fluorographene[48].



Fig. 1.5 Graphite fluoride to fluorographene. Image source: Ref. [46]

1.2.2 Group IV 2D materials

2D materials made of only single elements from the other members of group IVA elements have also been proposed and synthesized. These are silicene, germanene and stanene which are made of silicon (Si), germanium (Ge) and tin (Sn) atoms, respectively. They generally suffer from less stability as compared to graphene. The free standing form of these materials are difficult to make, therefore, they usually need ordered substrates to support them. Therefore, the measurements that have been done on these systems can not exclusively speak for the target material, i.e. the influence of the substrate is not negligible[49]. This, in turn, hinders the accurate determination of their properties. Despite these experimental difficulties, theoretical studies have more freedom to investigate their physical properties. One of the most important differences of these materials as compared to graphene is their not-flat buckled structure, see Fig. 1.6. The buckling parameters δ is defined as the interlayer distance of layers at different 2D atomic planes. According to calculations, δ is 0.45 Å for silicene, 0.69 Å for germanene and 0.85 Å for stanene[50]. This change corresponds to a more sp^3 -like character in the orbitals, and it increases with the atomic radius.

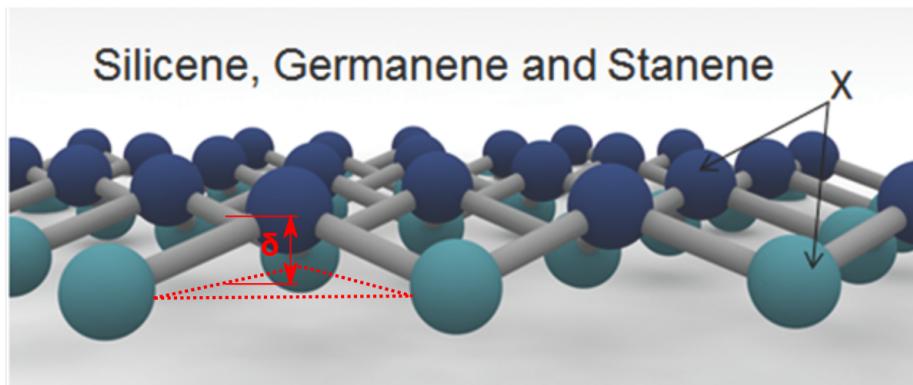


Fig. 1.6 Buckled hexagonal crystal structures of group IVA 2D materials ($X = Si, Ge,$ and Sn). Different colors represent different 2D atomic planes and their distance is the buckling parameter δ . Image is adapted from Ref. [51].

Although having a buckled structure, these materials also possess Dirac points with linear energy momentum dispersion around them[52]. However, as stated before, the substrate that supports these materials will induce symmetry breaking which leads to the loss of the massless Dirac character of the electrons/holes[49]

in these materials. Moreover, SOC in these materials are predicted to be larger than that in graphene due to larger atomic weights. With the inclusion of SOC, this corresponds to 1.9 meV band gap in silicene and 101 meV in stanene[50]. The mechanical stiffness and strength are lowered as compared to graphene and have a reducing trend with increasing atomic number in this group. This is partially due to the fact that the bond angle deformation in the buckled structure is less costly in energy than bond stretching in a flat structure[53]. For example, silicene has a 2D Young's modulus around 62 N/m, which is four times smaller than graphene. Another important difference of these materials from graphene regards the realization of a monolayer. The lack of a layered bulk counterpart of these materials implies that the mechanical exfoliation is inapplicable, which usually produce the highest quality samples. Therefore, methods used in this case are either bottom-up synthesis techniques onto highly ordered substrates[54, 55], or top-down methods like chemical exfoliation to isolate grown target monolayer from the substrate[56, 57].

1.2.3 2D from layered materials

The layered structure of graphite contributes the most to the isolation of graphene. If the interlayer bonding were not the weak vdW interaction but rather a covalent type, even the concept of layers can not stand let alone to break the bonds only in one direction and keep others in the other two directions. Therefore, a reasonable way to explore other 2D materials is by considering other layered materials, e.g. hexagonal boron nitrides and transition metal dichalcogenides. In this section, I will discuss the general physical properties of these two materials as examples for 2D materials from layered materials.

Boron Nitride

Among the multiple structural phases of Boron Nitride, the layered hexagonal phase (h-BN) is the most stable one, see Fig. 1.7 for the structure. A single layer extracted from h-BN gives 2D h-BN. Because of its structural similarity to graphene and its wide band gap it is often referred as white graphene[58]. 2D h-BN has a band gap of 6.1 eV according to calculations. An intuitive tight binding analysis reveals the band gap, in the case of 2D h-BN, to be proportional

to the difference of p_z orbitals from B and N atoms. For silicene and graphene, this difference is zero thus so is the band gap. Moreover, as a result of different electronegativity, i.e. 2.0 for B and 3.0 for N, ionic character develops which further enlarges the band gap[59]. Several interesting features of this material are reported: strong mechanical stiffness and strength close to graphene[60], a good thermal conductivity of $100\text{-}270 \text{ W m}^{-1} \text{ K}^{-1}$ for few-layer h-BN[61] as an electrical insulator, a high oxidation resistance up to 700°C in contrast to 400°C for graphene[62], etc. Benefiting from its compatible bond length, i.e. 1.446 \AA , with graphene (1.42), it is a perfect partner for graphene to form heterostructure electronic devices and to serve as a dielectric substrate[63]. The resulting system gives a larger mobility for graphene as compared to the case where, for instance, SiO_2 substrate[64] is used.

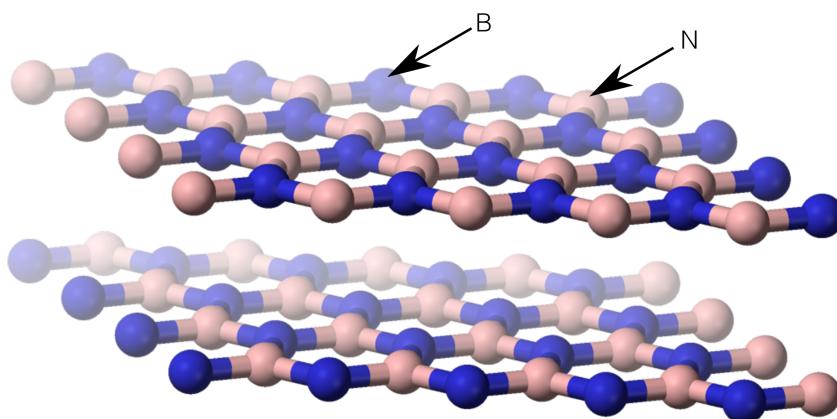


Fig. 1.7 Layered hexagonal crystal structures of h-BN. Image is adapted from Ref. [65].

Transition Metal Dichalcogenides

Transition metal dichalcogenides (TMDs) have the general formula of MX_2 , where M stands for the group IVB-VIIB elements in the transition metal series in the periodic table, and X is a group VIA element. This is another type of layered materials, and single layers of some of them have been experimentally realized. These materials typically exist in three different structural phases as shown in Fig. 1.8, which at monolayer level can be either H or T phase. One of the most important

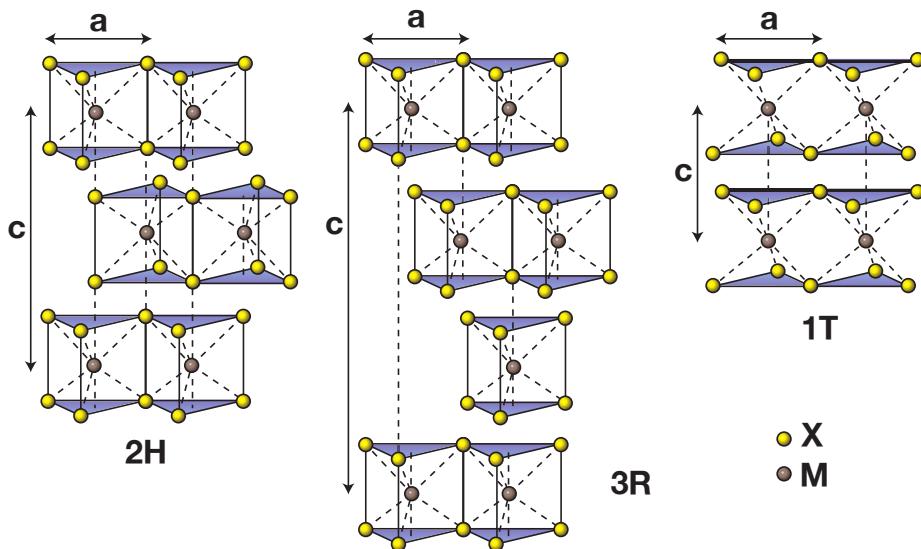


Fig. 1.8 Layered structures of TMDs. 2H: two layers per unit cell with hexagonal symmetry; 3R: three layers per unit cell with rhombohedral symmetry; 1T: one layer per unit cell with tetragonal symmetry. a is the in-plane lattice constant for TMDs are in the range from 3.1 to 3.7 Å. c is the vertical lattice constant. The interlayer distance has a typical length of 6.5 Å. Image source: Ref. [66]

differences in these two phases is the lack of inversion symmetry in the H phase in contrast to the T phase. Therefore, spin-orbit coupling (SOC) becomes more important in H and induces spin splitting. For instance, 456 meV electron spin states splitting in WSe₂[67] has been reported. Note that inversion symmetry is recovered in the layered bulk form and hence suppresses SOC. Another important consequence of reducing dimensionality is the indirect-to-direct band gap transition from layered TMDs to its 2D counterpart, see for example Fig. 1.9. 2D-TMDs have a broad range of potential applications. Electrocatalysis[68, 69] benefits from adequate active sites, electronic devices[70, 71] benefit from typical band gap of 1-2 eV, Li or Na batteries[72, 73] benefit from high surface-to-volume ratio and short diffusion path, photocatalysis benefits from high stability under extreme light intensity[74, 75], and biomedicine benefits from enhancement of the physiological stability and biocompatibility of polymers on 2D-TMDs[76, 77].

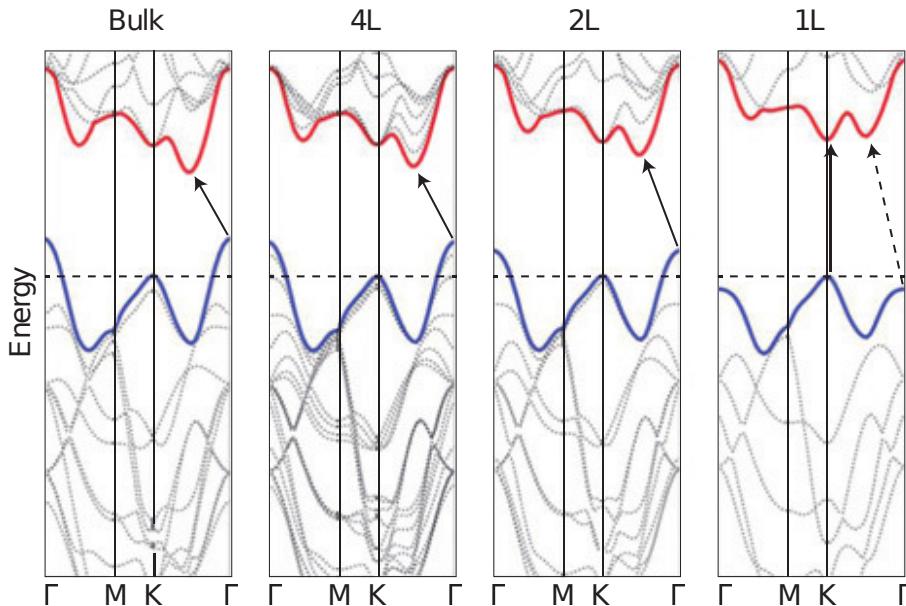


Fig. 1.9 Band structure evolution of MoS₂ from bulk to single layer. Solid arrow indicates the band gap. Image source: Ref. [78]

1.3 1D from 2D: nanotubes and nanoribbons

The reduction of materials dimensions did not stop at the 2D level. Further lowering it will result in 1D nanotubes or nanoribbons. A nanoribbon is a strip of a 2D sheet with nanoscale width and microscale length and it is still flat. Whereas nanotubes are formed by rolling up of nanoribbons into a tube structure. Each nanotube, as well as each nanoribbon (but with different definition), is associated with a chiral vector that uniquely defines its structure parameters except for the length which is considered to be infinite in theory. In Fig. 1.10, \vec{a}_1 and \vec{a}_2 are the unit lattice vectors in graphene. The chiral vector, \vec{C} , is the superposition of these two unit vectors with indices pair (n,m) . Zigzag edge always result from a $(n,0)$ form and (n,n) is always produce an armchair edge. Everything else is called chiral type edge. This finite-length chiral vector also defines the radius of the tube. Nanoribbons, on the other hand, have these three types of edges as well, however, in this case, edges have infinite length.

Having confinements in other directions, the physical properties of these systems are expected to be different than that for their higher dimension counterparts. For example, graphene nanoribbons have a finite band gap in contrast

to the zero band gap of graphene[79]. Moreover, control of this confinement will give tunable physical properties. For example, the band gap in a graphene nanoribbon is inversely proportional to the width of the nanoribbon[80]. The zigzag edges in graphene nanoribbons form spin-polarized magnetic states and give ferromagnetic ordering along the edge and anti-ferromagnetic ordering across the edges[81]. For nanotubes, those having the same edges belong to the same class of chirality and have the same electronic structure. For instance, armchair carbon nanotubes are metallic, other types are semiconducting. But small radius tubes can be exceptional due to the large curvature[82]. The strong mechanical strength and high thermal conductivity of graphene nanoribbons and nanotubes are similar to those in graphene.

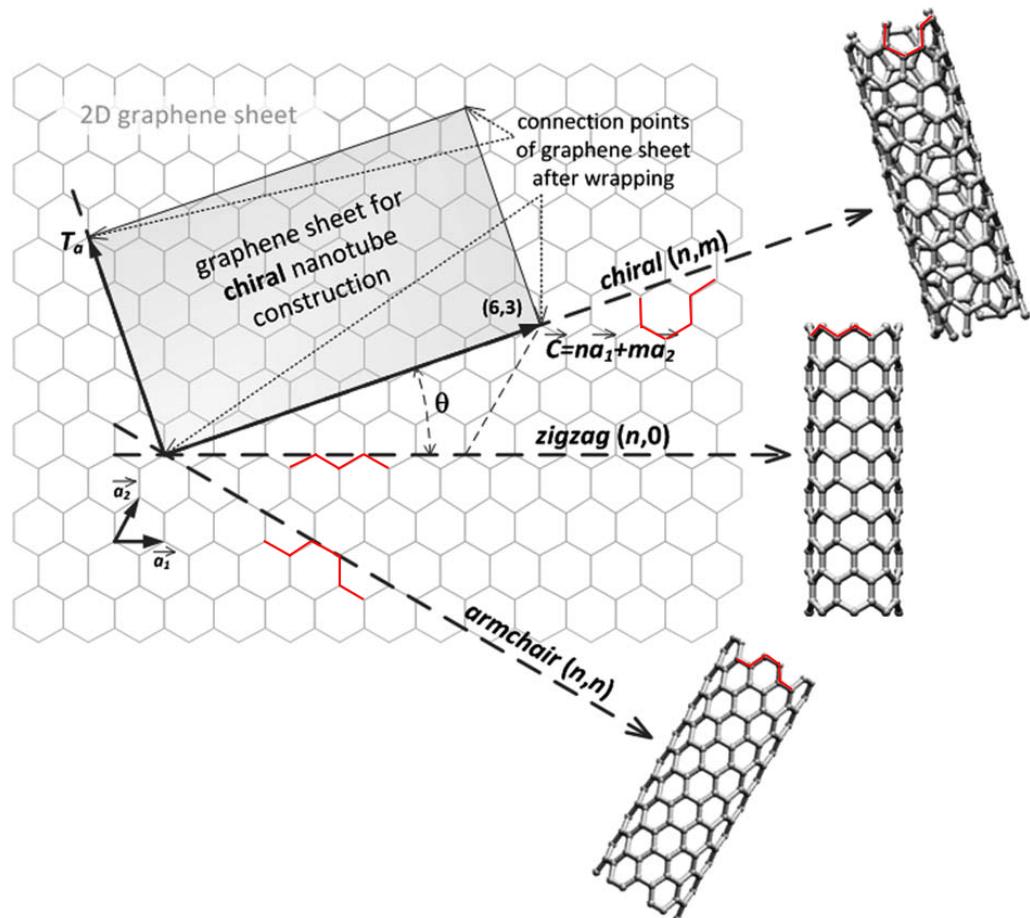


Fig. 1.10 Chiral vector and different types of nanotubes as obtained by rolling them up in different directions. Image is adapted from Ref. [83].

1.4 Synthesis methods

In this last section, I will briefly discuss some of the well-known synthesis methods for 2D materials. In Fig. 1.11, an overview of graphene production methods is displayed.

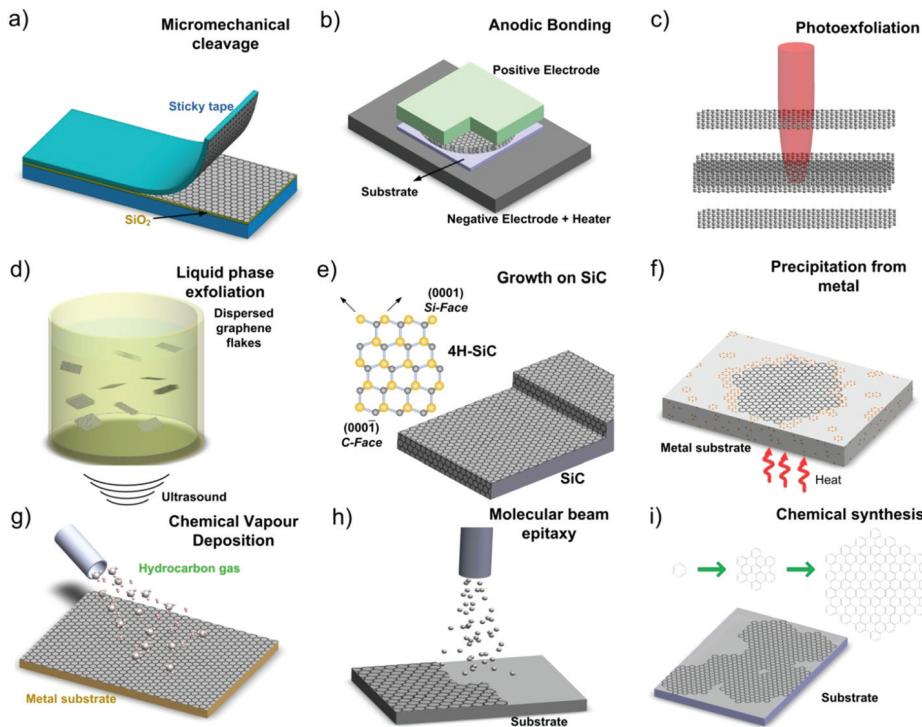


Fig. 1.11 Graphene production setups. Image source: Ref. [84]

Micromechanical cleavage

Micromechanical cleavage is also known as mechanical exfoliation, which was the method used for the first successful isolation of graphene in 2004 using an adhesive tape[2]. It involves separating layers in layered materials by mechanical, electrostatic, or electromagnetic forces. This method gives a high-quality product and is suitable for laboratory-scale samples ideal for fundamental studies. Large scale productions are impractical through this method. Room temperature mobility was measured up to $20,000 \text{ cm}^2 \text{V}^{-1} \text{s}^{-1}$ [85] of graphene on SiO_2 prepared with this method.

Liquid phase exfoliation

Liquid phase exfoliation is the extraction of layers in a proper solvent using ultrasounds. The cavitation-induced bubbles collapse around graphite and will generate a compressive stress wave. As a primary result, this will cause a reflective tensile wave whose strength is proportional to the number of such bubbles. Intensive tensile stress is enough to break graphite into graphite flakes. Additionally, as a secondary effect, shear effect can be developed from the unbalanced lateral stress and separates two adjacent layers. Liquid phase exfoliation is a promising method to synthesize cheap and scalable samples.

Growth on SiC

The growth of graphene on SiC involves SiC sample annealing at high temperature ($> 1400^{\circ}\text{C}$) in a vacuum or under an atmospheric pressure. The sublimation of silicon atoms leaves behind carbon atoms on the surface which will rearrange to form a graphitic layer[86], see Fig. 1.12. Apart from having high reproducibility and the ability to grow homogeneous large-area samples, this method has the advantage that graphene is available on a semiconducting substrate ready for layered electronic device integration.

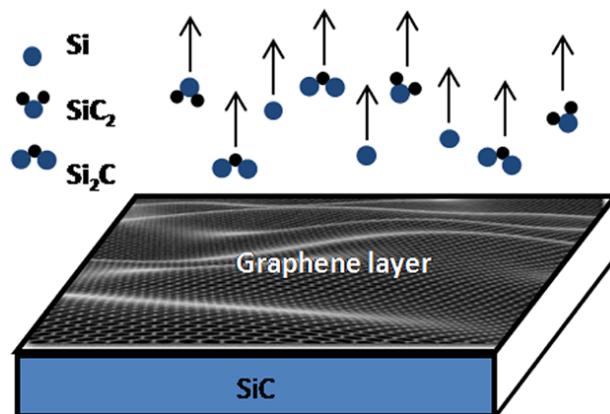


Fig. 1.12 The growth of graphene on SiC wafer. Image source: Ref. [86]

Chemical vapor deposition

CVD is a popular method to grow amorphous or crystalline thin films from solid, gaseous or liquid precursors. It is a direct deposition of a vaporized desired material onto a particular substrate. Various CVD methods exist depending on their operating pressure, type of vaporization and whether it is plasma-assisted or not etc. Graphene grown on transition metals is usually of high quality. Carbon atoms from organic sources in the gas phase are deposited on a metal (Ni, Ru, Ir etc.) and convert to graphene at high temperature. Then, for characterization, graphene is transferred to a proper substrate. Typical mobility of such type of sample is around $1000\text{-}25000 \text{ cm}^2\text{V}^{-1}\text{s}^{-1}$ [87]. A 30-inch graphene film has been produced from roll-to-roll production through CVD methods by Bae et al. [88], see Fig. 1.13. The product was measured to be a better electrode than commercially available indium tin oxides.

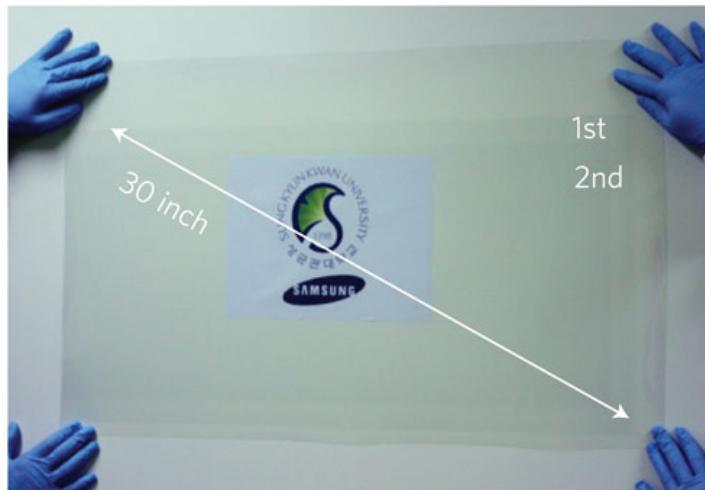


Fig. 1.13 An ultra-large-area graphene film. Image source: Ref. [88]

Chapter 2

Computational methods

Theories behind the calculations are the core component in the theoretical determination of material properties. Its correctness, accuracy and implementation directly influence the quality of its predictions. In this chapter, I will introduce relevant theoretical models, approximations and their implementations in commonly used software packages.

2.1 Theory

2.1.1 Density Functional Theory

Density functional theory (DFT) is one of the most widely used quantum mechanical methods to calculate the properties of materials. Its applicable length and time scales are in nanometre and picoseconds, respectively. These scales are longer than that for quantum Monte Carlo simulations but lower than that for semi- or full-empirical methods. This is also true in the accuracy verse size-of-the-system plot in [Fig. 2.1](#). However, the accuracy of the different methods can be higher than what is shown in the figure, this is because a large part of the error can also be attributed to uncertainties of the experimental results with which these methods are compared[[89](#)]. As I will discuss further, if a DFT method is compared with a highly accurate theoretical benchmark method, DFT will have typically a precision around 1 meV/atom. Particularly, for bulk or nanostructures, DFT can be therefore used to even quantitatively predict the properties of materials. Since DFT is based on the Hohenberg-Kohn theorems[[90](#)] and

Kohn-Sham equations[91], I will briefly give an overview of them without putting too much stress on their derivations which have been extensively documented in textbooks.

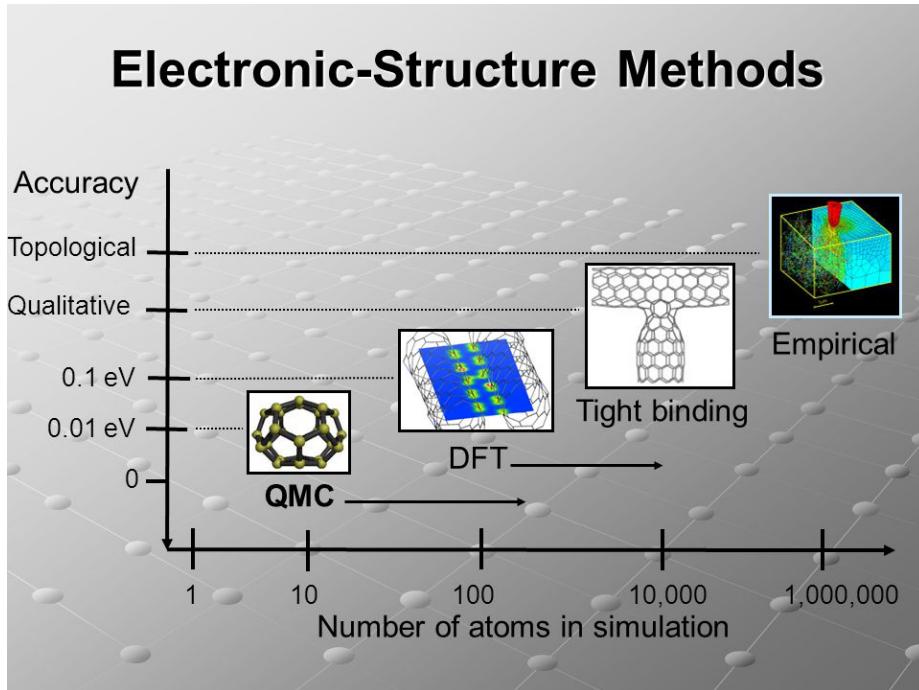


Fig. 2.1 Comparison of the accuracy and the size of different electronic structure calculation methods. Image source: Ref. [92]

Materials are made from atoms that contain electrons and nuclei. The type of nuclei and the interactions between these give rise to various materials and their properties. The interactions are mainly electrostatic or Coulombic. While electrons must be described with quantum mechanics, the nuclei can be treated as classical particles. The equation governing the electron behaviour is the Schrödinger

equation. It can be written as follows:¹

$$\begin{aligned}
 \hat{H} \psi_\alpha(\vec{r}_1\sigma_1, \dots, \vec{r}_N\sigma_N) \\
 &= \left[-\frac{1}{2} \sum_{i=1}^N \nabla_i^2 + \sum_{i=1}^N v(\vec{r}_i) + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i=1} \sum_{j \neq i} \frac{1}{|\vec{r}_i - \vec{r}_j|} \right] \psi_\alpha(\vec{r}_1\sigma_1, \dots, \vec{r}_N\sigma_N) \\
 &= (\hat{T} + \hat{V}_{ext} + \hat{V}_{ee}) \psi_\alpha(\vec{r}_1\sigma_1, \dots, \vec{r}_N\sigma_N) \\
 &= E_\alpha \psi_\alpha(\vec{r}_1\sigma_1, \dots, \vec{r}_N\sigma_N).
 \end{aligned} \tag{2.1}$$

In the above equation, \hat{H} is the total Hamiltonian, \hat{T} is the kinetic energy, \hat{V}_{ext} is the interaction between electrons and nuclei. Here we already started with the first approximation: Born–Oppenheimer approximation[93]. This approximation neglects the dynamics of nuclei, thus electrons are considered moving in a static potential generated by their interaction with all nuclei. \hat{V}_{ee} is the Coulomb interaction between electrons. The first two terms sum over all N electrons, and the last one sums over all pairs of N electrons. \vec{r} is the electron position, and σ is the z-component of the electron spin ($+\frac{1}{2}, -\frac{1}{2}$). ψ is the N -electron wave function, which should be antisymmetric under the interchange of the orbital and the spin coordinates of two electrons (i.e. fermionic character of electrons) and it should also satisfy the boundary condition of the system (e.g. quantum confinement in a low-dimensional system). E is the total energy, and α is the complete set of N -electron quantum numbers.

Following the constrained search algorithm introduced by M. Levy[94], the ground-state energy E can be found by minimizing the expectation value of the total Hamiltonian with respect to the wave function:

$$E = \min_{\psi} \langle \psi | \hat{H} | \psi \rangle. \tag{2.2}$$

Here we take two steps for the minimization. For the first step, we minimize with respect to all wave functions that give the same density $n(\vec{r})$:

$$E = \min_{\psi \rightarrow n} \langle \psi | \hat{T} + \hat{V}_{ee} | \psi \rangle + \int d\vec{r}^3 v(\vec{r}) n(\vec{r}). \tag{2.3}$$

¹Equations in this chapter are written in cgs form: length, mass, time and energy are in units of centimetre, gram, second and erg, respectively. Additionally, fundamental constants \hbar , e^2 and m are set to unity.

Then with the resulting wave function ψ_n^{min} that yields the minimum energy E , an overall electron density $n(\vec{r})$ is associated. We can construct the universal functional $F[n(\vec{r})]$:

$$\min_{\psi \rightarrow n} \langle \psi | \hat{T} + \hat{V}_{ee} | \psi \rangle = \langle \psi_n^{min} | \hat{T} + \hat{V}_{ee} | \psi_n^{min} \rangle = F[n(\vec{r})]. \quad (2.4)$$

For the second step, we minimize with respect to the density $n(\vec{r})$:

$$E = \min_n \left\{ F[n(\vec{r})] + \int d\vec{r}^3 v(\vec{r}) n(\vec{r}) \right\}, \quad (2.5)$$

where $v(\vec{r})$ is kept fixed during the minimization. The resulting density is the ground-state density that gives the ground state energy. This is known as the density variational principle, which is also the main idea of the Hohenberg-Kohn theorems. For completeness I present the theorems below:

Theorem 1 *The external potential, $V_{ext}(\vec{r})$, of any system of interacting particles is uniquely determined (up to a constant) by the particle density, $n_0(\vec{r})$, of the ground state.*

Theorem 2 *The ground state energy of a system with an external potential $V_{ext}(\vec{r})$ is given by the minimum value of the energy functional $E_{HK}[n]$ and the density for which this minimum is reached corresponds with the ground state density $n_0(\vec{r})$.*

Now, the main problem is to find an approximate expression for $F[n(\vec{r})]$. The Kohn-Sham equation is an elegant way to do this. It aims to construct a non-interacting system where the kinetic energy can be calculated exactly, and a local external potential $V_{KS}(\vec{r})$ is added. The functional $F[n]$ decomposes into the following, where $Exc[n]$ is the exchange-correlation (XC) energy:

$$F[n] = T_s[n] + E_H[n] + Exc[n], \quad (2.6)$$

where $T_s[n]$ is the non-interacting kinetic energy functional, and $E_H[n]$ is the Hartree energy functional:

$$E_H[n] = \frac{1}{2} \int d^3 r \int d^3 r' \frac{n(\vec{r})n(\vec{r}')}{|\vec{r} - \vec{r}'|}. \quad (2.7)$$

Apart from the last term, $E_{XC}[n]$, everything else can be calculated exactly for a non-interacting system for given density. By imposing a normalisation constraint on the electron density, $\int n(\vec{r})d\vec{r} = N$, we have

$$\frac{\delta F[n]}{\delta n(\vec{r})} = -v(\vec{r}). \quad (2.8)$$

Therefore, the effective local potential $V_{KS}(\vec{r})$ will be

$$V_{KS}(\vec{r}) = v(\vec{r}) + \frac{\delta E_H[n]}{\delta n(\vec{r})} + \frac{\delta E_{XC}[n]}{\delta n(\vec{r})}, \quad (2.9)$$

and the Kohn-Sham equation reads

$$\left[-\frac{1}{2}\nabla_i^2 + v(\vec{r}) + \frac{\delta E_H[n]}{\delta n(\vec{r})} + \frac{\delta E_{XC}[n]}{\delta n(\vec{r})} \right] \psi_\alpha(\vec{r}\sigma) = \epsilon_\alpha \psi_\alpha(\vec{r}\sigma), \quad (2.10)$$

with ground-state electron density given by

$$n(\vec{r}) = \sum_{\alpha}^{\text{occ.}} \sum_{\sigma} |\psi_\alpha(\vec{r}\sigma)|^2. \quad (2.11)$$

These set of equations can be solved self-consistently. An initial guess of the density $n(\vec{r})$ determines the effective potential $V_{KS}(\vec{r})$, then the wave functions $\psi_\alpha(\vec{r}\sigma)$ can be calculated from [equation \(2.10\)](#), a new density is calculated through [equation \(2.11\)](#). This procedure is repeated until self-consistency is reached.

2.1.2 Exchange-correlation functional

The XC energy functional is not known exactly and therefore needs to be approximated. The choice of it directly influences the accuracy of the results. This is because, although it is often a small fraction of the total energy, its contribution to the chemical bonding and the formation energy is relatively important. For the XC approximation, the GGA has become popular in solid state calculations. It is a further upgrade of its previous version, the LDA. The LDA has the following form:

$$E_{XC}^{LDA}[n] = \int n(\vec{r}) \epsilon_{XC}[n(\vec{r})] d\vec{r}. \quad (2.12)$$

$\epsilon_{XC}[n(\vec{r})]$ is the XC energy for an homogeneous electron gas having density n , and it is usually taken from quantum Monte Carlo calculations. The GGA further includes the derivative of the density, $\nabla n(\vec{r})$, as an argument for ϵ_{XC} , thus it reads

$$E_{XC}^{GGA}[n] = \int \epsilon_{XC}[n(\vec{r}), \nabla n(\vec{r})] d\vec{r}. \quad (2.13)$$

In contrast to LDA, there is no unique input for $\epsilon_{XC}[n(\vec{r}), \nabla n(\vec{r})]$. Different constructions for GGA usually named after the corresponding authors, e.g. PW91-GGA stands for Perdew and Wang's GGA construction in 1991[95, 96] and PBE-GGA stands for Perdew et al. [97]'s construction. They are the most popular GGA approximations for solid state systems.

Jacob's ladder

Jacob's ladder is a ladder connecting earth and heaven that biblical Patriarch Jacob dreamed about. Professor John P. Perdew, who is known for his profound contributions to DFT and XC functionals, used it analogously to describe the hierarchy of density functional approximations in terms of their accuracies, see Fig. 2.2. Each rung is a level of approximation constructed with different formalisms. From LDA and GGA as mentioned before to meta-GGA which includes the Kohn-Sham kinetic energy density. The next method up the ladder is the hybrid functionals which incorporate a part of the exact exchange from HF theory. For example, the PBE0 functional[99] has the following definition:

$$E_{XC}^{PBE0} = \frac{1}{4} E_X^{HF} + \frac{3}{4} E_X^{PBE} + E_C^{PBE}. \quad (2.14)$$

The HSE06[100] takes into account the screened Coulomb potential for the exact part:

$$E_{XC}^{HSE} = \beta E_X^{HF,SR}(\omega) + (1 - \beta) E_X^{PBE,SR}(\omega) + E_X^{PBE,LR}(\omega) + E_C^{PBE}, \quad (2.15)$$

where β is the mixing parameter and ω is the parameter to control the screening range which defines the short-range, SR, and long-range, LR, parts. The values $\beta = 1/4$ and $\omega = 0.2$ are typically used in the HSE06 functional which turns out to give accurate band gaps and lattice constants, see the MAE of different functionals in Fig. 2.3. The highest ranked funcional is the double hybrid which in-

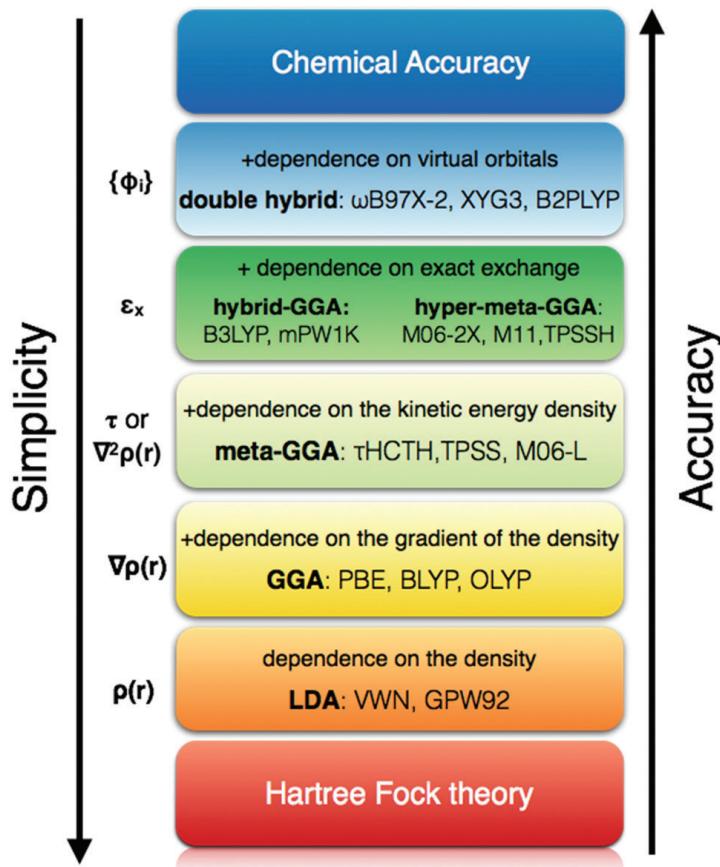


Fig. 2.2 Jacob's ladder for DFT approximations. Image source: Ref. [98]

cludes the unoccupied orbitals as well, e.g. Random Phase Approximation[102].

Band gap problem

As shown in Fig. 2.3, band gaps estimated in LDA and GGA are quite poor. This can be attributed to the highly non-analytical and non-local behaviour of the XC energy functional. To understand this, let's look at the definition of the band gap E_g :

$$E_g = I - A = \varepsilon_{N+1}^{KS,HOMO} - \varepsilon_N^{KS,HOMO}, \quad (2.16)$$

where I is the ionization energy, which is the energy change by removing one valence electron. A is the electron affinity, which is the energy change by adding

¹The SC40 test set is a collection of 40 elementary and binary solid compounds of various structures having a wide range of band gaps.

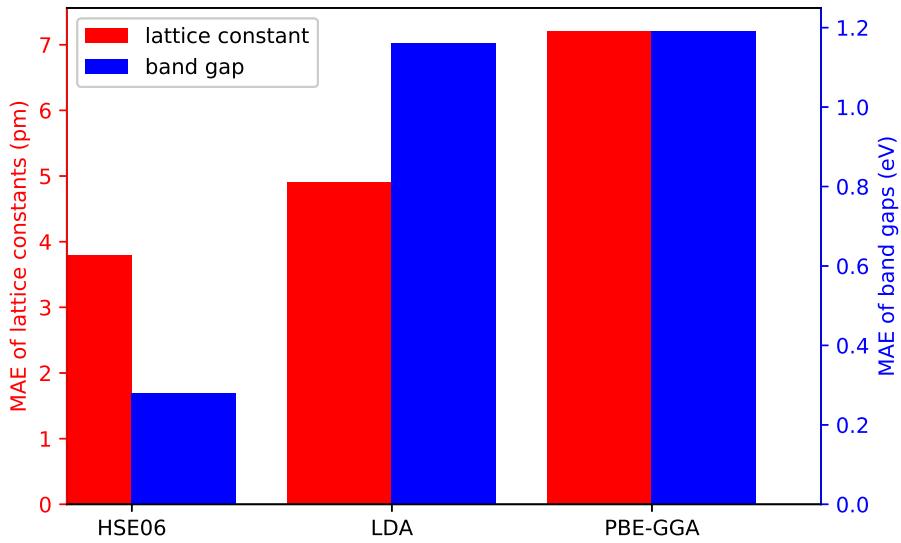


Fig. 2.3 MAE of the equilibrium lattice constants and band gaps of different functionals on SC40 solid test set¹. Data source: [101]

one electron to a neutral system. ε_N^{KS} is the Kohn-Sham orbital energy for N -electron system. *HOMO* and *LUMO* stand for the highest and the lowest occupied molecular orbital, respectively. For a non-interacting Kohn-Sham system, E_g^{KS} can be calculated as follows:

$$E_g^{KS} = \varepsilon_N^{KS,LUMO} - \varepsilon_N^{KS,HOMO}. \quad (2.17)$$

This leads to

$$E_g = E_g^{KS} + \Delta_{XC}, \quad (2.18)$$

where Δ_{XC} is the orbital shift caused by adding an extra electron: $\varepsilon_{N+1}^{KS,HOMO} - \varepsilon_N^{KS,LUMO}$. The Δ_{XC} exclusively depends on the non-analyticity of the XC potential $\frac{\delta E_{XC}[n]}{\delta n(r)}$, since the Hartree potential explicitly depends on the density. In other words, it means the energy increase by adding an extra electron in the extended system is of the order of 1 eV, even though, it is an infinitesimal density change. If the XC energy functional were analytic, the infinitesimal density variation would not introduce a large potential change, hence Δ_{XC} is small or equals to zero, and $E_g \approx E_g^{KS}$. The accuracy of the band gap, when compared to experiment, would be only limited by the error that is inherent to the different functionals.

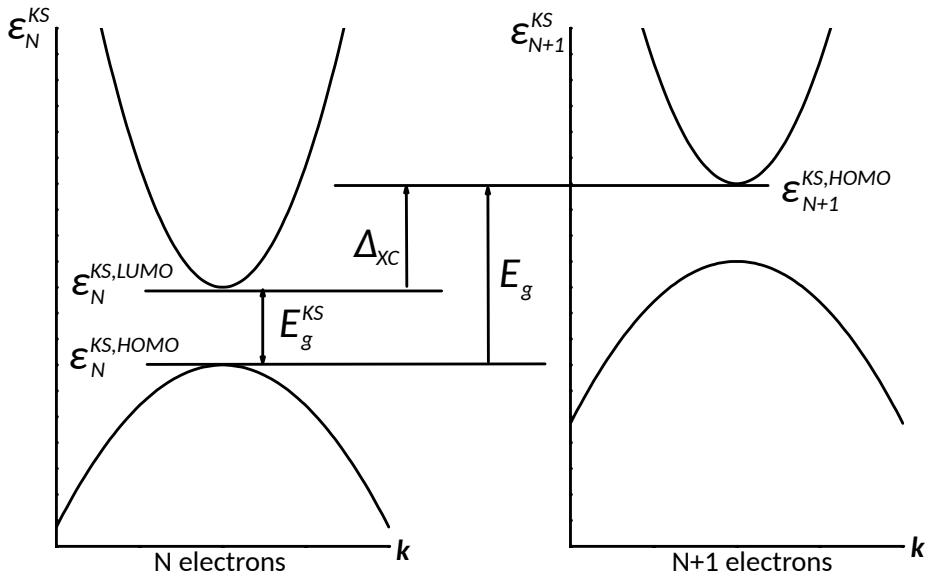


Fig. 2.4 Schematic illustration of the relation between E_g and E_g^{KS} . Image is adapted from Ref. [103].

However, Δ_{XC} usually is not zero and it is responsible for the 80% of the LDA band gap error[104].

2.2 Implementation

The implementations of the above theory are crucial and not straightforward. Many of the quantities are represented with technically easy-implemented functions, and they have to be finite in size or quantity. A question will rise on how large the size or the resolution has to be. This is equivalent to the computational convergence. Here we review two of the most important convergence parameters: number of \mathbf{k} points and cut-off energy of the basis set.

k points

According to Bloch's theorem, the solution of the Schrödinger equation for a periodic system, e.g. a crystal with a well-defined unit cell, can be expressed as follows:

$$\phi_{\mathbf{k}}(\mathbf{r}) = e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{r}} u_{\mathbf{k}}(\mathbf{r}), \quad (2.19)$$

where ϕ is the wave function, u is a function having the same periodicity as the crystal. The vectors \mathbf{r} and \mathbf{k} are associated with the real and the reciprocal space (\mathbf{k} space), respectively. Particularly, each point in \mathbf{k} space is associated with a unique \mathbf{k} vector and is usually called a \mathbf{k} point. Making use of the translational symmetry of the system, all inequivalent \mathbf{k} points are contained inside a finite subspace of \mathbf{k} space, called the first Brillouin zone (FBZ). Quantity evaluations are mostly done through the integration of wave functions, or other functions having \mathbf{k} dependence, over the FBZ. This integration has to be done numerically since the explicit relation of ϕ and \mathbf{k} is unknown. In practice, the FBZ is discretized into a grid defined by the mesh of the k-points. This mesh has to be large enough for accurate sampling of the FBZ, yet it should be small enough to reduce the computational time and computer memory. This is one of the convergence tests that need to be done in order to obtain reliable results. Usually, metals need more k-points than semiconductors. This is because the highest occupied valence band crosses the Fermi energy in metals, hence the integration for all occupied states is done for a discontinuous function that excludes unoccupied states. Whereas for a semiconductor or insulator, the highest occupied valence band is completely occupied, therefore the integration is for a continuous function. Smearing is one of the ways to transform a discontinuous function in a metal into a continuous one by smearing out the edge using a smearing function, e.g. a Fermi-Dirac function. The range of smearing has to compromise between the computation efficiency and correctness: Too large will give wrong integration results of the total energy, while too small becomes useless, therefore one again needs more k-points.

Basis set, cut-off energy

Now let us look back at [equation \(2.19\)](#). There we can identify $e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{r}}$ as a plane wave, $u_{\mathbf{k}}(\mathbf{r})$ is periodic in space and it can be expanded in terms of a set of plane waves as well:

$$u_{\mathbf{k}}(\mathbf{r}) = \sum_{\mathbf{G}} c_{\mathbf{G}} e^{i\mathbf{G}\cdot\mathbf{r}}, \quad (2.20)$$

where $c_{\mathbf{G}}$ is the coefficient that determines the magnitude of the plane wave $e^{i\mathbf{G}\cdot\mathbf{r}}$. [Equation \(2.19\)](#) can now exclusively be represented as a sum over plane

waves:

$$\phi_{\mathbf{k}}(\mathbf{r}) = \sum_{\mathbf{G}} c_{\mathbf{k}+\mathbf{G}} e^{i\mathbf{k}+\mathbf{G}\cdot\mathbf{r}}. \quad (2.21)$$

The summation in the above equation, for practical reasons, has to be truncated. The truncation is usually done for the kinetic energy:

$$E = \frac{1}{2}|\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{G}|^2. \quad (2.22)$$

The maximum kinetic energy, E_{cut} , is associated with a \mathbf{G} vector and defines the limit of the summations. Here we arrived at another convergence parameter: the plane wave cut-off energy. Similar to the number of \mathbf{k} points, it has to be large enough for the total energy to be converged in an acceptable precision range. While too large will cost more computational resources without additional benefits.

Pseudopotentials and projected augmented-wave method

Considering the chemical inertness of the core electrons and their highly oscillating wave functions, their impact on the valence electrons is generally approximated by pseudopotentials in order to optimize the computational efficiency. It is a smooth function and has the ability to reconstruct the original core electron properties. Transferability of a pseudopotential is one of the most important factors that determine the performance of the potentials. In practice, a pseudopotential is usually constructed for one isolated atom of one element, while being used in complex multi-elements systems, the potentials with higher transferability can simulate a real atom within different environments. Ultrasoft [105] and projected augmented-wave (PAW) [106, 107] are two types of the most popular pseudopotentials-based methods used in materials simulations. They are well-balanced between accuracy and computational cost. In this thesis, the PAW method is exclusively used for all calculations. This method combines the ideas of the pseudopotential methods and all-electron methods. Similar as in the case of pseudopotentials, in PAW, the true wave function $|\Psi_n\rangle$ that is obtained from all-electron methods can be transformed into a smooth auxiliary function $|\tilde{\Psi}_n\rangle$ by a linear transformation operator \mathcal{T} . The partial waves $|\phi_i\rangle$ form the complete basis set in which the wave function is expanded and it can be also related to

auxiliary partial waves $|\tilde{\phi}_i\rangle$:

$$|\phi_i\rangle = \mathcal{T}|\tilde{\phi}_i\rangle, \quad (2.23)$$

where i is a complete set of quantum numbers. The true and the auxiliary wave functions are identical outside the cut-off radius r_c :

$$\phi_i(\mathbf{r}) = \tilde{\phi}_i(\mathbf{r}), \text{ for } |\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{R}| > r_c, \quad (2.24)$$

where \mathbf{R} is the position of the atom. The transformation operator \mathcal{T} takes the following form:

$$\mathcal{T} = 1 + \sum_i (|\phi_i\rangle - |\tilde{\phi}_i\rangle) \langle \tilde{p}_i |, \quad (2.25)$$

where \tilde{p}_i are the projector functions that capture the character of the true wave function within a radius of r_c . Now the all-electron wave functions can be reconstructed through the smooth auxiliary functions and projector functions :

$$|\Psi_n\rangle = |\tilde{\Psi}_n\rangle + \sum_i (|\phi_i\rangle - |\tilde{\phi}_i\rangle) \langle \tilde{p}_i | \tilde{\Psi}_n \rangle. \quad (2.26)$$

The PAW method expresses the true all-electron wave functions with smooth functions that can be easily implemented and perform more efficiently as compared to the all-electron wave functions. Moreover, the accuracy of the calculations are comparable to that for the all-electron ones.

2.2.1 Software Packages

There are more than 70 different software packages capable of performing density functional theory calculations according to Wikipedia[108]. They mainly differ in the type of pseudopotentials, the type of basis set that is used to expand the wave function, in which programming language it is written and whether or not it is free or commercial etc. Lejaeghere et al. [109] have compared 40 different implementations and their accuracy by comparing their results to a highly accurate all-electron method. They concluded that all codes or methods yield generally consistent results. The accuracy of the codes which were developed in recent years is higher than the earlier ones. The VASP[110, 111] with its PAW method is one of the most accurate codes that was investigated in this study. Its well-optimized performance on supercomputers gives good results in less time

as compared with the others. Therefore, this code will be used as the main tool for all the calculations done in this thesis.

Chapter 3

General physical properties of 2D materials

In this thesis, the properties of materials are divided into a preliminary and an advanced category, where the latter will be presented in the next chapter as the main results of this thesis. In this chapter, I will focus on the preliminary properties of 2D materials, namely structural, electronic, vibrational and mechanical properties. These properties can be used to test the methodology and form the foundation upon which the advanced properties are calculated. They are composed both of my original calculations and from results of the literature. Emphasis will be on the characteristic properties of 2D materials that are different from 3D materials.

3.1 Structural properties

3.1.1 Layered structure: from multi- to monolayer

As discussed in [chapter 1](#), layered bulk materials are closely related to 2D materials. A single layer of a layered bulk material is a 2D material. This anisotropic nature is attributed to the weak interlayer bonds and the strong intralayer bonds. vdW interaction [112] is the main source of the weak interlayer bonds. vdW interactions consist of attraction and repulsion between atomic or molecular entities caused by dipole-dipole, dipole-induced dipole and instantaneous induced dipole-induced dipole forces. The definition is sometimes extended to include

all dispersion forces between molecules. For 2D materials, the vdW interaction becomes important when the number of layers is larger than one; i.e. few-layer materials having typically less than ten layers. They also belong to the family of 2D materials since the thickness of the materials is still small and quantum confinement effects are very important. As in its layered bulk counterpart, a few-layer system is a stack of monolayers held together through vdW forces. When no other bonding types are present, interlayer vdW interaction determines the changes when going from a single layer to multilayer, and its impact on the electronic structure can be significant. For example, from monolayer to bilayer graphene, the low energy linear dispersion relation of energy E as a function of k around the K point evolves into a parabolic-like spectrum[113, 114].

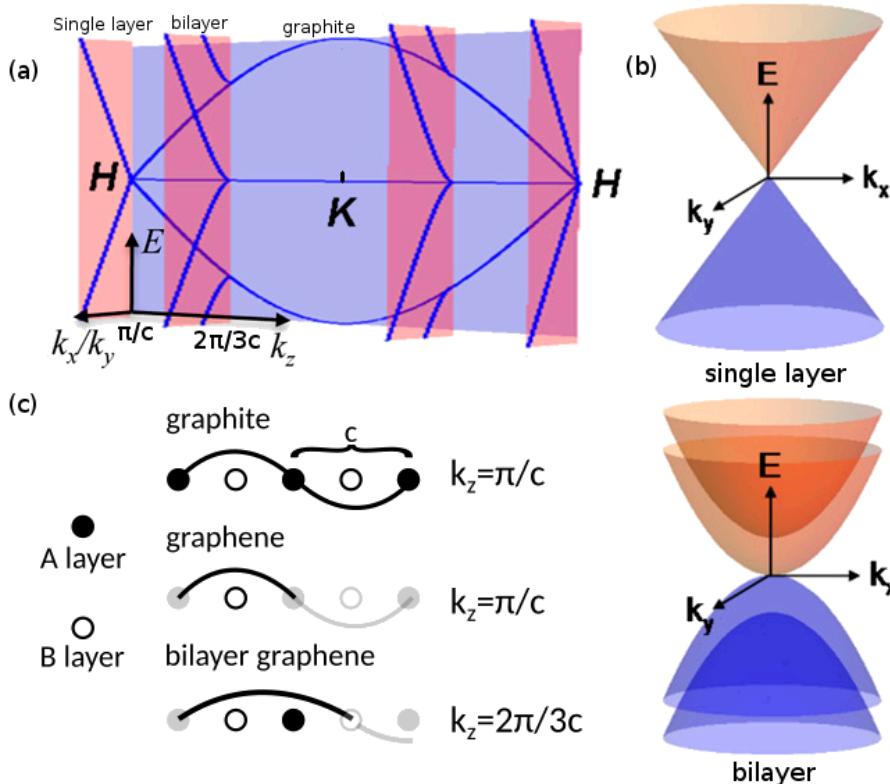


Fig. 3.1 (a) Energy-momentum dispersion relations of single layer and bilayer graphene as approximated by plane intersections of 3D graphite dispersion relation and (b) their 3D dispersion relations around the K point. (c) Matching of the wavelength in graphite to that in single layer and bilayer graphene. Image is adapted from Ref. [114].

In Fig. 3.1(a), the dispersion relation of graphite along the z direction, that is the HKH line in the Brillouin zone, is shown on the blue plane. This direction is perpendicular to the graphite layers. Because of quantum confinement in a few-layer system, standing waves are presented with a finite number of wave vectors. If only the intralayer and interlayer interactions between the nearest neighbour atoms were considered, the dispersion relation in few-layer graphene can be approximated as those on the cross-section of virtual planes (the red planes in Fig. 3.1(a)) with the 3D graphite dispersion relation. These planes are perpendicular to the z direction and intersect with the HKH line at limited points. This is called the quantization¹ of dispersion relations[115]. These points are illustrated in Fig. 3.1(c). Quantum confinement in a few-layer system requires that the wave functions vanish at the imaginary layer right outside the surface of the system, the systems will have well-defined wave vectors. Then, the dispersion relations of graphene and bilayer graphene will be on the red planes that intersect the HKH line at $k_z = \pi/c$ and at $k_z = 2(\pi/3c)$, respectively, where c is the lattice constant of graphite that is vertical to the graphite plane. Having the knowledge of the 3D band structure of graphite, one can approximate the dispersion relation of few-layer systems in this way. As shown in the red plane in Fig. 3.1(a) and the 3D version in Fig. 3.1(b), graphene has a linear dispersion relation and bilayer graphene has two parabolic-like bands. Moreover, the bilayer structure will never pass through the H point where graphene has passed to have a linear dispersion relation. This is because the standing waves in a bilayer will have a wave vector $k = 2(n\pi/3c)$, where n is a positive integer: 1, 2, ..., n. This will never be equal to π/c for any integer number of n . More generally, systems with an even number of layers will not have a linear dispersion relation, and vice versa for systems that have an odd number of layers. Further, if other interactions were considered, an overlap of those bands touching each other would have occurred[113]. This overlap increases with the number of layers. Eventually, maximum overlap is reached in graphite.

Another example of the importance of interlayer interactions in few-layer 2D materials is seen for MoS₂. As mentioned in chapter 1, when going from layered bulk to monolayer, MoS₂ transforms from an indirect band gap to a direct one. Here again, we can make use of the quantization scheme to approximate

¹Sometimes it is also referred as zone-folding.

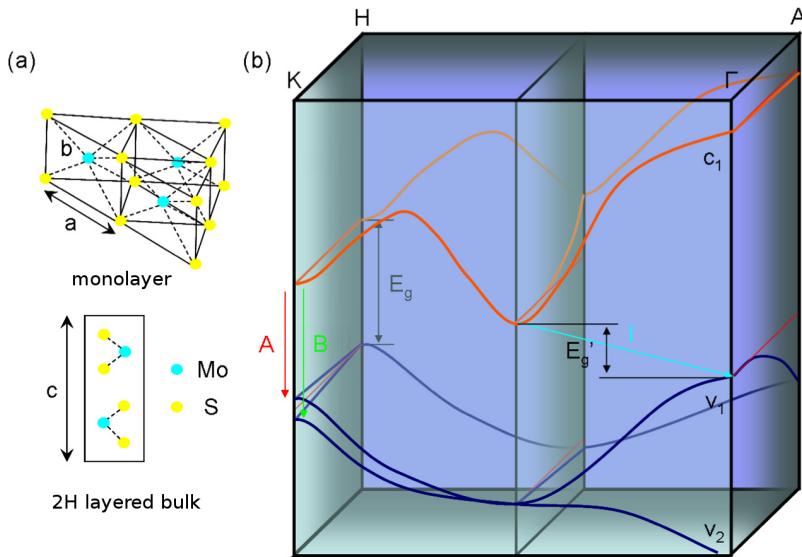


Fig. 3.2 (a) The atomic structures of monolayer and layered bulk MoS₂. (b) The energy-momentum dispersion relation of monolayer MoS₂ as a plane intersection of the 3D dispersion relation. Image is adapted from Ref. [116].

the band structure of the monolayer from that of its layered bulk. The monolayer and the layered bulk structure of the 2H phase are shown in Fig. 3.2(a). In Fig. 3.2(b), let us focus on the planes parallel to the page that pass through the $K\Gamma$ line and the HA line (simply call them $K\Gamma$ plane and HA plane below). Similar to the previously discussed graphite, 2H layered bulk MoS₂ has two layers per unit cell. Therefore, according to the standing wave arguments that we have used for the graphene case above, HA plane represents the monolayer. E_g and E'_g are the band gaps of the monolayer and the layered bulk structures. Here, not only the magnitude of the band gap is increased as going from layered bulk to monolayer, the character of the band gap has changed as well. It is clearly shown that this is due to the shifting of the band edges. VBM at Γ and CBM at the middle of the ΓK line are brought closer as they go from monolayer to layered bulk. This corresponds to the widening of the band width and it is coming from the splitting of the VB and CB when more and more layers interact with each other through the interlayer interactions. Therefore, the band gap in the layered bulk is defined by these two band edges, which in the monolayer was defined by the band edges at K . In contrast to this, the band edges at the K point are not affected too much by the interlayer interaction. So why do the band

edges react differently to the interlayer interactions? If we look into the orbital composition of the band edges, we will find the ones that have widened the most, i.e. VBM at Γ , have the largest contribution from S p_z and Mo d_{z^2} orbitals. These out-of-plane orbitals are orientated vertically to the plane and thus have maximum overlap with the others from an adjacent layer. Therefore, band splitting is more profound for these band edges and causes an increase of their band width. In contrast, both the CBM and VBM at K are largely composed of S p_x and p_y orbitals and Mo d_{xy} and $d_{x^2-y^2}$ orbitals. All of them are in-plane orientated orbitals and thus have limited effect on the interlayer interaction[117].

3.1.2 sp^n hybridization

After discussing layered structures and the importance of interlayer interaction, let us look into some detail in the in-plane structure and how sp^n hybridization gives rise to various structures for 2D materials, where n is the hybridization index that will be discussed in the following. When atoms come together to form bonds, the orientation of bonding orbitals are decisive for the final structure. The hybridization of s and p orbitals is a good example of this. It mainly exists in three different variants: sp , sp^2 and sp^3 , see Fig. 3.3. The hybridization index n in sp^n stands for the relative amount of p character in the resulting hybridized orbital. For example, sp^2 has 1/3 s character and 2/3 p character. Hybridized orbitals tend to maximize their distance to reduce the energy raised by the repulsion of electrons. As shown in Fig. 3.3, this results in a tetrahedral structure of sp^3 orbitals, as in diamond, trigonal planar structure of sp^2 orbitals, as in graphene or graphite and linear structure of sp orbitals, as in ethyne molecules. This is, for example, useful to explain the buckled structure of graphane and fluorographene. Because the sp^3 character is induced when the fourth electron is bonded with H or F atoms, and as a result buckling appears in these systems.

Coulson and Moffitt [119] generalized the relation of bond angle with n as follows:

$$1 = -\sqrt{n_1 n_2} \cos\theta_{12}, \quad (3.1)$$

where θ_{12} is the bond angle between orbital 1 and 2. If orbital 1 and 2 have different sp hybridization n_1 and n_2 , we still need one more constraint to solve the equation (3.1) for the hybridization indices n . This constraint is that, in the

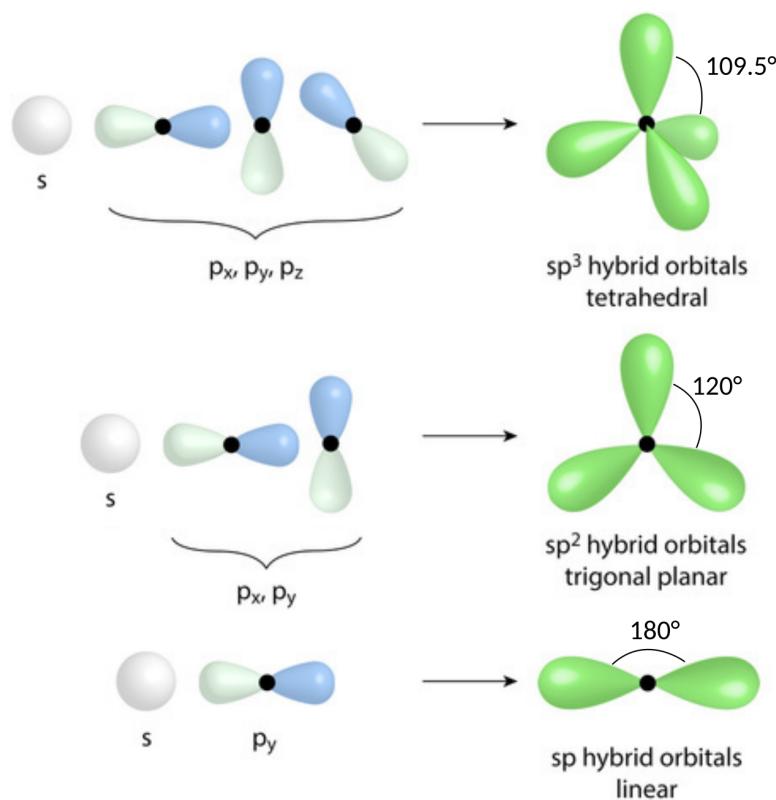


Fig. 3.3 Three types of sp hybridized orbitals. Image is adapted from Ref. [118].

In the case of carbon atoms, the total portion of s orbitals should be equal to 1, while it should be 3 for the p orbitals. With these pieces of knowledge, [equation \(3.1\)](#) can be solved, and each orbital from one atom can be assigned with n . This formula is useful to determine the s and p fractions of the bonds. For example, $\theta_{12} = 90^\circ$ gives $n \rightarrow \infty$, which means it is a pure p orbital; $\theta_{12} = 120^\circ$ gives $n = 2$, that is a sp² hybridized orbital. Generally, the wider the bond angle, the larger the s contribution. Accordingly, bond angles are ordered as sp > sp² > sp³. Of course, [equation \(3.1\)](#) is more useful when the bond angle takes values other than those three types of hybridized orbitals mentioned, then it can be used to explain the resulting geometry.

3.2 Electronic properties

The electronic properties are among the first features we would like to know of new materials, not only because semiconductors and metals play different roles in applications, but also because details of the electronic structure set the direction for further exploration. One example from my experience is that by monitoring electronic structure variations under strain, we can predict how the mobility of the carriers can be tuned. This will be discussed in later chapters. Therefore, it is important to understand this property of a new material to fully reveal its potential. Electronic properties are usually characterized by the band structure (BS) and the DOS. These calculations are standard calculations in common first-principles codes from where all subsequent calculations start. After solving the Kohn-Sham equation with properly defined cut-off energy, number of k points etc., we will have the eigenenergy of each state, indexed by a k point in the Brillouin zone and a band number. The DOS counts such states at a specific energy. The BS is the plot of the eigenenergies along lines in the Brillouin zone that connect high symmetry k points. 2D materials have a vast variation of electronic properties, from semimetallic graphene to semiconducting MoS₂ and insulating BN. I will briefly discuss this at the end of this section. The purpose of this section is to point out some of the interesting electronic properties of some 2D materials. We will start with a brief introduction of the electronic properties of graphene.

3.2.1 Graphene

As mentioned before, the orbitals of the C atoms in graphene are sp² hybridized. Each one of these sp² orbitals, coloured in green in Fig. 3.4, is composed of s, p_x and p_y orbitals, whereas the p_z orbital, coloured in yellow in the figure, is left unchanged. One sp² hybridized orbital with the one from an adjacent atom forms a strong σ bond, while p_z orbitals form π bonds. It may look like alternative single and double bonds between atoms, however, according to Clar's theory, the bond order, i.e. the number of chemical bonds between a pair of atoms, in graphene is 4/3 and is uniform[120]. This has to do with the high symmetry of the graphene lattice.

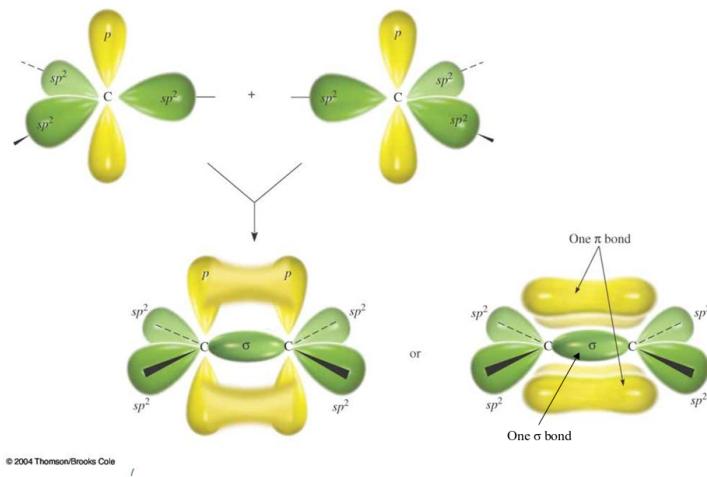


Fig. 3.4 The formation of $sp^2 \sigma$ and $p_z \pi$ double bond. Image source: Ref. [121]

Every C atom has the same local environment in graphene. However, adjacent atoms are not equivalent from a symmetry point of view. They belong to different hexagonal sublattices, A and B, as indicated with blue and yellow colors in Fig. 3.5. a_1 and a_2 are the basis vectors in real space connecting equivalent lattice sites. On the left, b_1 and b_2 are the basis vectors in reciprocal space connecting equivalent k points. The hexagon in reciprocal space is the first Brillouin zone where all inequivalent k points are contained. These k points correspond to different parallel lines of atoms and thus their directions in reciprocal space are associated with different directions in real space. The k wave vectors near the Γ point have longer wave length than those away from it. While those at the boundary of the first Brillouin zone have wave lengths that are twice the unit cell dimension in the direction specified by the k points. For example, the most interesting k points for graphene are the K and K' points. These directions correspond to the a_1 and a_2 directions in real space. It is only at these k points in the Brioulloin zone that the antibonding and the bonding π bands touch each other.

In contrast to π bonds, the σ bonds originate from a strong overlap of sp^2 orbitals. The interaction is so strong that the splitting of bonding and antibonding orbitals is large. This makes the σ bonding orbitals having large negative energies, or in other words, makes the σ bond strong and difficult to break. This fea-

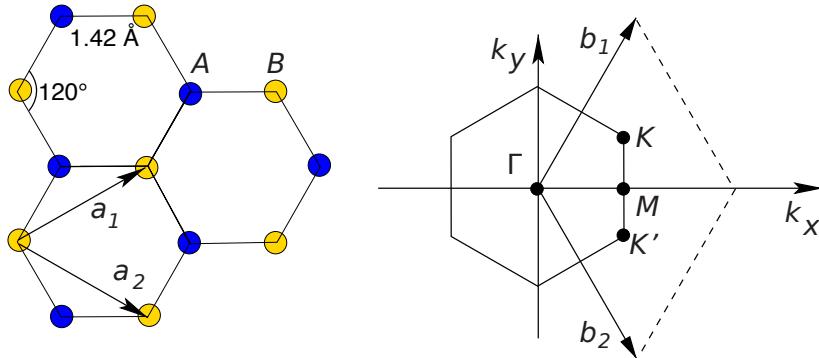


Fig. 3.5 Graphene lattice and its Brillouin zone. Image source: Ref. [14]

ture contributes the most to the mechanical strength of graphene. On the other hand, p_z orbitals are less overlapping. This makes the π bond energy close to the Fermi level, i.e. the highest occupied state. Therefore, they contribute the most to the electronic properties of graphene.

3.2.2 Dirac cone and symmetry

We have seen that graphene, silicene and germanene have an interesting electronic structure: forming Dirac cones. We also have listed the consequences of having such a feature: high mobility, massless carriers etc. In this section, we will discuss the symmetry condition for the existence of Dirac cones. This knowledge can be used to discover more materials exhibiting a Dirac cone. According

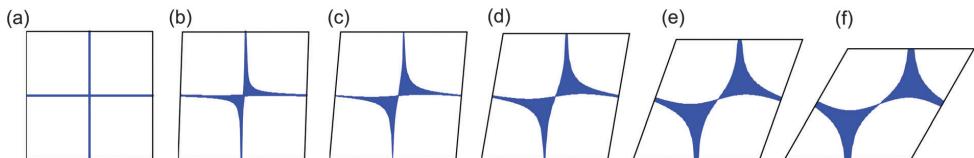


Fig. 3.6 Possible positions for the second atom (blue area) in order to guarantee the existence of Dirac cones as going from (a) square lattice to (f) hexagonal lattice. The first atom is located at the corners of the unit cell. Image source: Ref. [122]

to the von Neumann-Wigner theorem², the space-time inversion symmetry is crucial for the existence and protection of Dirac cones[123]. It is a combination

²This theorem describes the probability of a finite-dimensional matrix to have degenerate eigenvalues.

of space inversion and time reversal symmetries. These two are equally important and have to act simultaneously for the possible formation of Dirac cones. A more restrictive condition that guarantees the existence of Dirac cones has to deal with relations of hopping integrals[122, 124]. A study by Liu et al. [122] revealed that the hexagonal lattice has the most favourable structure to form Dirac cones. The probability decreases as one goes from a hexagonal lattice to a square lattice, as shown in Fig. 3.6. Therefore, since most of the 2D materials have hexagonal symmetry, there will be a higher chance of finding materials with Dirac cones in this category.

3.2.3 Examples: 2D-hBN, 2D-MoS₂ and graphene

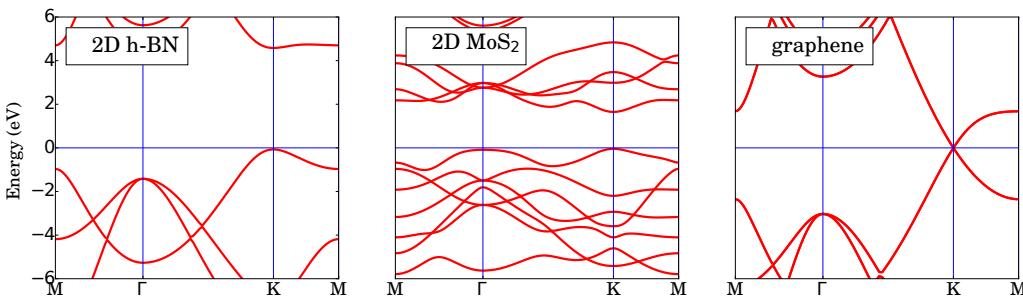


Fig. 3.7 Electronic band structures of 2D-hBN, 2D-MoS₂ and graphene calculated with PBE-GGA functional.

Three typical examples of the band structure of 2D materials are shown in Fig. 3.7. The 2D h-BN is an insulator due to a large band gap in the ultraviolet range, therefore it is suitable to serve as a dielectric layer in an electronic device. The 2D TMDs have a band gap ranging from 1.0-2.5 eV which is in the visible and the near infrared range of light, therefore, they are suitable for optoelectronic device applications. Furthermore, as we compare the dispersion curves along the M Γ and K Γ directions, we can see that the electronic structure is generally the same along these paths which correspond to different crystallographic directions. This means that these materials are highly isotropic, thus we would expect the same for their physical properties. In the result chapters of this thesis, we will investigate some new 2D materials that are highly anisotropic. Their discoveries enrich the features of the physical properties of 2D materials.

3.3 Vibrational properties

The vibrational properties form an important aspect of materials, especially at finite temperature. Thermal expansion, thermal conductivity and electron mobility are all vibrational related topics. Therefore, it is crucial to understand the characterization of this in computational modelling. The force \vec{F}_I on the atom I at the position \vec{R} can be calculated from the wave functions Ψ_0 evaluated from DFT thanks to the Hellmann-Feynman theorem as follows:

$$-\vec{F}_I = \langle \Psi_0(\vec{R}) | \nabla_I H(\vec{R}) | \Psi_0(\vec{R}) \rangle. \quad (3.2)$$

When searching for the equilibrium geometry of the materials, one basically tries different positions of atoms to find a geometry that minimizes all the forces. This usually is the first thing to do for new materials, since different codes, implementations and, more importantly, different functionals will give different results. Despite the fact that the differences are usually small, an unrelaxed geometry will have residual forces on the atoms. This is particularly important when vibrational properties are concerned. Vibrational properties are characterized through the energy (usually expressed in terms of frequency) versus vibrational wave vector dispersion relation. In crystals, all atoms vibrate around their equilibrium positions. The vibrational modes are quantized into phonons. Each phonon represents a periodic, collective vibration with a well-defined vibrational mode and wave vector. The forces (F) that restore the atoms when they deviate from their equilibrium positions can be calculated from DFT either by introducing small displacements or from perturbation theory. Then, the force constants, Φ , can be constructed by monitoring the change in forces through the displacements, u , of atoms in the following way:

$$\Phi_{i\alpha,j\beta} = \frac{\partial F_{j\beta}}{\partial u_{i\alpha}}, \quad (3.3)$$

where the i, j indices are the labels for atoms, α, β are the Cartesian directions: x, y and z . The Fourier transformation of the force constants at wave vector \mathbf{q} is the dynamical matrix $D(\mathbf{q})$ that is related to the frequency of the phonon through the eigenvalue problem:

$$\omega^2(\mathbf{q}, n)\mathbf{e}(\mathbf{q}, n) = D(\mathbf{q})\mathbf{e}(\mathbf{q}, n), \quad (3.4)$$

where $\omega(\mathbf{q}, n)$ is the frequency of the phonon in mode n having wave vector \mathbf{q} , and $\mathbf{e}(\mathbf{q}, n)$ is the corresponding eigenvector[125, 126]. Depending on whether atoms in the unit cell are vibrating in-phase or out-of-phase, phonon modes are categorized into acoustic and optical, respectively. For polar materials, charged atoms that vibrate with respect to each other can interact with light, which is the reason that these types of vibrations are called optical modes. Further, considering the respective directions of the wave (\mathbf{e}) and vibration (\mathbf{q}), the modes are subcategorized into transverse optical (TO) modes and transvers acoustic (TA) modes, where $\mathbf{q} \perp \mathbf{e}$, and longitudinal optical (LO) and longitudinal acoustic (LA) modes, where $\mathbf{q} \parallel \mathbf{e}$. These modes are all in-plane vibrations for 2D materials. For 2D materials, another direction is different from those in-plane ones, namely the \mathbf{c} lattice vector direction perpendicular to the 2D plane. Special modes exist: out-of-plane transverse optical (ZO) and out-of-plane transverse acoustic (ZA) ($\mathbf{q} \perp \mathbf{e}$ and $\mathbf{q} \parallel c$). The total number of acoustic modes is three, that of optical modes is $3N-3$, where N is the total number of atoms in the unit cell.

3.3.1 Example: 2D-MoS₂

Let us now take layered bulk and monolayer MoS₂ as examples to highlight some of the important details of the phonon dispersion relations in 2D materials. A comparison of vibrational modes between layered bulk and monolayer MoS₂ is presented in Fig. 3.8(a). First of all, the number of atoms in the unit cell reduces from six to three from layered bulk to monolayer. Therefore, the number of optical modes will be reduced as well from 15 in layered bulk to six in the monolayer. In Fig. 3.8(a) it is shown, as the material is transformed to the monolayer, that several modes merge with others that only differ by whether the vibration in different layers is in-phase or out-of-phase. Secondly, a characteristic feature of phonon disperions for layered bulk and 2D materials has appeared, namely the quadratic ZA mode (flexural mode). It is usually linear in 3D bulk materials because of strong interlayer interactions. Because in layered bulk, the interlayer interactions are weak and absent in 2D materials, therefore, it will cost less en-

ergy for the out-of-plane vibration and a quadratic dispersion will appear[127]. This feature is closely related to the formation of the intrinsic ripples in 2D materials, e.g. graphene[128] and MoS₂[129]. As shown in Fig. 3.8(b), phonons with longer wave lengths, i.e. around Γ , in ZA mode have smaller frequencies or energies. This means this mode is more easily excited at low temperature and forms ripples which can be often observed in 2D materials. The formation of ripples is crucial for the stability of 2D materials at finite temperature. Lastly, in the projected DOS, the projections of mode eigenvectors to in-plane (XY) and out-of-plane (Z) components are shown. The modes with Z components, i.e. ZO₁, ZO₂ and ZA, contribute the most to the Z projections, and vice versa for the longitudinal and acoustic modes to the XY projection.

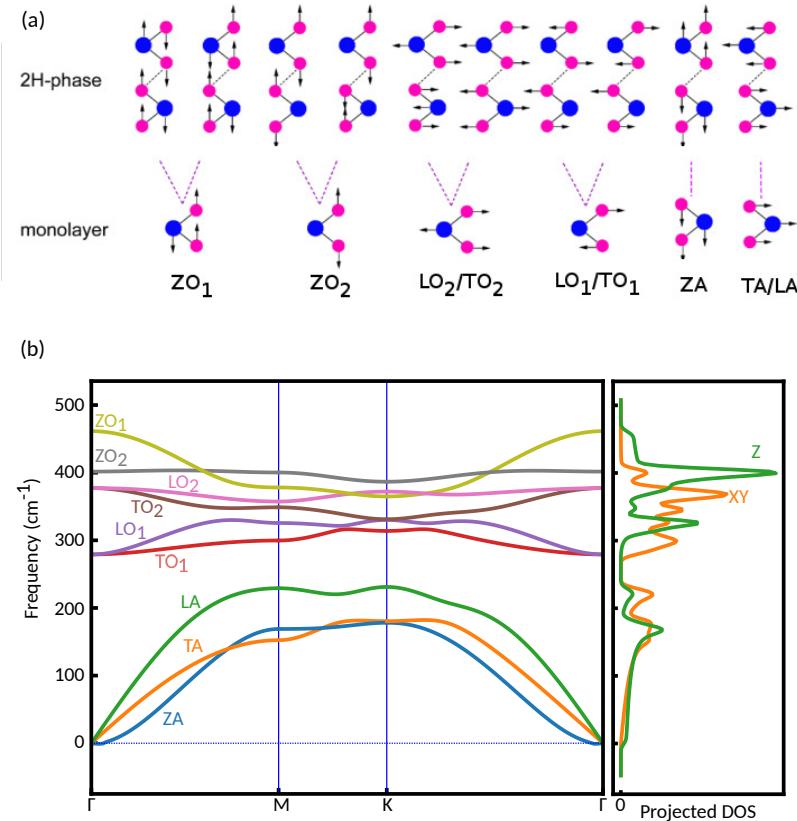


Fig. 3.8 (a) Phonon modes of layered bulk (first row) and monolayer (second row) MoS₂ at the Γ point. (b) Phonon dispersion and projected DOS of monolayer MoS₂.

3.3.2 Dynamic stability from phonon dispersion

One of the most useful features of the phonon dispersion is the possibility to check the dynamical stability of the structure. An unstable structure is usually indicated by the presence of imaginary frequencies in the phonon spectrum in some part of the Brillouin zone, see Fig. 3.9 for example.

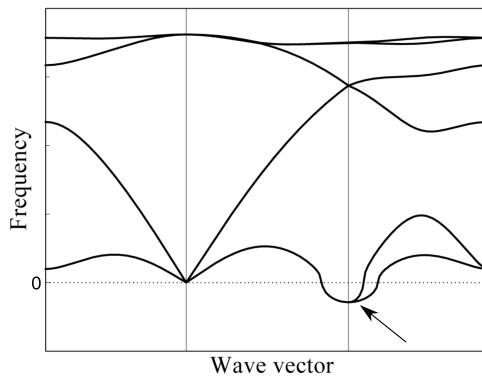


Fig. 3.9 Imaginary frequencies are shown as negative frequencies in a phonon dispersion plot

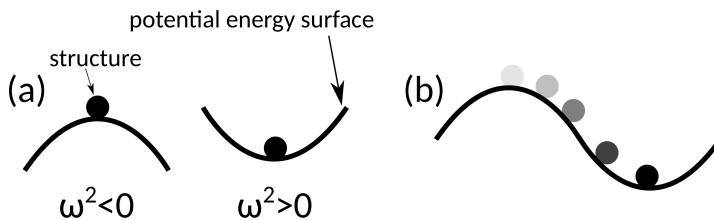


Fig. 3.10 (a) A structure at the convex (left) and the concave (right) of the PES. (b) Searching for a stable structure (phase transition).

Now let us try to understand this and make use of it to convert an unstable to a stable structure. Consider a relaxed structure in which the forces on all atoms have vanished. This could be locally at the maximum or the minimum of the PES, see Fig. 3.10. Note that, in both situations, the forces, the derivative of the PES curves, are zero. Therefore, both situations can occur when the structure is relaxed by only following the forces. In the case of a convex PES, the dynamical matrix $D(\mathbf{q})$ will have negative components because the direction of the force is the same as the displacement. We have seen from equation (3.4) that $D(\mathbf{q})$ is related to the square of the frequency ω , hence imaginary frequencies are

the only solutions. However, a structure with imaginary frequencies near the Γ point does not necessarily mean it is not stable. Since a large supercell consisting of multiples of the unit cell is typically used to do phonon calculations, it may be that the size of the supercell is not large enough to correctly describe long wavelength phonons. In contrast to this, a structure with imaginary frequencies that appear around other q points than the Γ point would imply a structure instability or a structural phase transition. The lowering of the energy with some vibrational modes means that the structure prefers a modulation as induced by the vibration, therefore if we calculate the energy of the modulated structure we will have a lower energy structure. With advanced techniques in phonon software[e.g. 130], it is possible to perturb such a structure based on the vibration mode which has an imaginary frequency to find a lower energy state and stabilize the structure, as schematically illustrated in Fig. 3.10(b).

3.4 Mechanical properties

In chapter 1, we have discussed the stiffness and strength of some of the 2D materials. These are some of the mechanical properties of materials. The force on the atoms or the stress σ on the unit cells under a finite strain ϵ are typical outputs from common first-principles codes. Within the elastic regime of the stress-strain relation, they can be related through the elastic constant C : $\sigma = C\epsilon$, this is Hook's law. C is a 6×6 matrix with matrix elements C_{ij} . The elements measure the resistance of a material in the i direction to a deformation in the j direction, where i and j are the index of stress and strain tensors, respectively, and refer to particular directions. With the Voigt notations, the indices have the following correspondence: 1 → xx, 2 → yy, 3 → zz, 4 → yz, 5 → zx, 6 → xy. The elastic constants can be simplified if the crystal symmetry and dimension are taken into account. For example, for 2D hexagonal lattice symmetry, Hook's law reads:

$$\begin{pmatrix} \sigma_1 \\ \sigma_2 \\ \sigma_6 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} C_{11} & C_{12} & 0 \\ C_{12} & C_{11} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & (C_{11} - C_{12})/2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \epsilon_1 \\ \epsilon_2 \\ \epsilon_6 \end{pmatrix}. \quad (3.5)$$

In this way, all elastic constants can be extracted from stress-strain data using first-principles calculations. Generally, it is more convenient to have a single quantity to describe a particular aspect of the mechanical properties of the material. This is where the Young's modulus Y , shear modulus G and Poisson's ratio ν become useful. Following previous notations, they are defined as

$$Y_\alpha = \frac{1}{S_{\alpha\alpha}}, \quad \alpha = 1, 2, 3 . \quad (3.6)$$

$$\nu_{\alpha\beta} = -Y_\beta S_{\alpha\beta}, \quad \alpha, \beta = 1, 2, 3 \quad (\alpha \neq \beta) . \quad (3.7)$$

$$G_{\gamma\gamma} = \frac{1}{S_{\gamma\gamma}}, \quad \gamma = 4, 5, 6 , \quad (3.8)$$

where $\mathbf{S} = \mathbf{C}^{-1}$ is the compliance matrix [e.g. 131]. The Young's modulus and shear modulus give the stiffness of the material when it responds to a stretching and shearing deformation in particular directions and they stand for the hardness of the material. Their unit in 2D is J/m^2 or N/m . To make them comparable to conventional 3D materials, 2D moduli usually are converted into 3D ones by dividing the former by the thickness of the sheet. Poisson's ratio gives the ratio of the transverse to the axial strain. It represents how easy it is to change the shape of the material with respect to changing the volume. Liquid and rubber have a Poisson's ratio close to 0.5, which is the theoretical upper limit of this quantity and making them the easiest materials to change shape over volume. In contrast, a cork has a Poisson's ratio close to zero, meaning zero lateral expansion when compressed in other directions. The breaking strength/strain is a measure of the maximum load limit that a material can withstand and it is used to characterize the strength of a material. This quantity is usually obtained by continuously deforming the material until they break and recording the maximum stress/strain. This can be done both experimentally and through simulations.

3.4.1 Examples: graphene, 2D-hBN and 2D-MoS₂

In table 3.1, the mechanical properties of several 2D materials are listed, as well as that of steel for comparison. As mentioned, graphene is the strongest ma-

terial ever measured. This is due to its strong σ bonding. With similar bonding in BN, it shows comparable results to graphene. MoS₂ has lower stiffness and strength than the previous two due to weaker bonding, nevertheless, it is still much stronger than steel. The Poisson's ratio has an inverse relation with Young's modulus. This means graphene acts more like cork than rubber as compared to MoS₂.

Table 3.1 Mechanical properties of graphene, 2D-hBN and 2D-MoS₂

material	Young's modulus TPa	Breaking strength GPa	Poisson's ratio
graphene[23]	1.0±0.1	130±10	0.149[132]
2D-hBN [133]	0.71–0.97	120–165	0.210
2D-MoS ₂ [134]	0.27± 0.10	23	0.29 [135]
A36 steel[136]	0.2	0.4–0.55	0.26

3.4.2 Mechanical stability: Born stability criteria

Mechanical stability is a criterion for unstressed crystal stability, which is additional to dynamical stability. It was first pointed out by Born [137] in the 1940's, and is therefore often called "Born stability criteria". Its core concept is that the elastic energy should be positive for any non-zero strains. The elastic energy U is related to the elastic constants C_{ij} in the following way:

$$U = U_0 + \frac{1}{2} V_0 \sum_{i,j=1}^6 C_{ij} \epsilon_i \epsilon_j, \quad (3.9)$$

where U_0 is the equilibrium energy and V_0 is the equilibrium volume. According to Born's paper[137], the necessary and sufficient stability conditions are: 1) $|\mathbf{C}| > 0$; 2) all eigenvalues of \mathbf{C} are positive; 3) Sylvester's criterion: the determinants of the upper-left k by k sub-matrices are positive; (4) an arbitrary set of minors of \mathbf{C} are positive. Mouhat and Coudert [138] formulated closed form expressions of these criteria for different crystal systems. Taking into account the symmetry of these systems, the number of criteria reduces, and becomes very useful to check the mechanical stability of a new crystal system. For example, for a 2D hexagonal crystal, the criteria become: $C_{11} > |C_{22}|$ and $C_{66} > 0$.

Chapter 4

Results of Physical Properties Calculations in Novel 2D Materials

In this and the next chapter, the main results of the thesis will be presented. In [chapter 1](#), I have reviewed some of the early post-graphene 2D materials, and their physical properties in [chapter 3](#). As it has been defined, the properties discussed before belong to the basic property category. In this chapter, I will present my work on the determination of some of the advanced physical properties, namely thermal properties, piezoelectric properties, magnetic properties and Li battery related properties. In addition, along with these new properties I will also introduce several new 2D materials on which the property determinations were carried out. These are phosphorene, monolayer titanium trisulfide, penta-hexa-graphene and MXenes. Each of the sections below results in one research paper.

4.1 Thermal properties of black and blue phosphorene¹

4.1.1 Introduction

Black phosphorene (black P) is a single atomic layer of black phosphorus and has been successfully exfoliated [[139](#), [140](#)]. Similar to the multiphase structures in

¹This work is published: [P3](#).

phosphorus, at least six different possible stable 2D allotropes of phosphorene were proposed[141–143]. This multi-phase nature is because in contrast to the C atoms of graphene, the P atoms in phosphorene have sp^3 -hybridized orbitals. This is mainly caused by the extra valence electron of P atoms in comparison to carbon. Indeed, if this extra electron is placed in a sp^2 -hybridized structure, they would occupy the energetically unfavourable (antibonding) π^* band. However, with sp^3 -hybridization, a σ -bond network can be formed with three sp^3 orbitals and the other sp^3 orbital is used to host the remaining electron pair. This leads to an essentially tetragonal coordination of the P atoms and results in a buckled nature of sp^3 -hybridized sheets, see Fig. 4.1 for the structures. The out-of-plane positions of the atoms in sp^3 -hybridized sheets give rise to various possible structural phases which are absent in sp^2 -hybridized systems. Among those, black P, also referred as the α phase, is the most stable allotrope. However, the cohesive energy of blue phosphorene (blue P), or the β phase, is only a few meV higher than that of black P, while other crystal structures are much less favourable with energy at least by ~ 80 meV/atom higher.

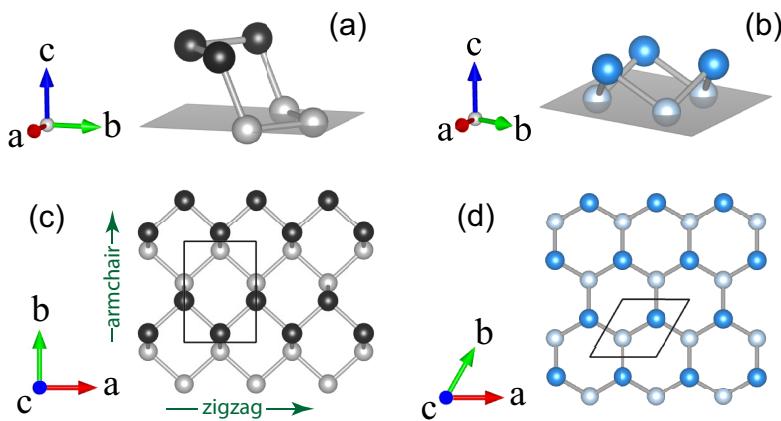


Fig. 4.1 (a) and (b) show the hexagonal rings of black P and blue P. Their top viewed structures are shown in (c) and (d), respectively. Atoms are coloured in accordance with the names of the structures. Lighter coloured atoms mean they are lower in vertical position. Black boxes in top views are the primitive unit cells used in our calculations.

Triggered by its experimental realization, various physical properties of phosphorene have been explored. Electronically, black P is a semiconductor with a

direct band gap at the Γ point[141, 144]. Experimentally, photoluminescence excitation spectroscopy measured a quasi-particle band gap of 2.2 eV[145], which is larger than its bulk band gap, i.e. 0.31-0.33 eV[146, 147]. Due to its electronic structure, black P has been proposed as a potential novel material in nanoelectronics and optoelectronics, especially in the infrared regime. High performance black P based transistors with a mobility up to $1000 \text{ cm}^2/\text{V}\cdot\text{s}$ and an on/off ratio up to 10^4 at room temperature have been reported[139, 140]. Similar to black P, blue P was predicted to be a semiconductor material with an indirect band gap around 2.00 eV[141]. Therefore, it can be potentially used for field-effect transistor applications. The high mobility and tunable finite band gap of phosphorene, among other promising properties[148–152], make it an interesting new member of the 2D materials. Despite the mentioned studies that aimed to explore the physical properties of phosphorene, a more comprehensive knowledge of finite temperature effects on their properties has not been reported. Given the fact that this knowledge could contribute to the acceleration in the progress towards its proposed applications, this study[P3] is urgently needed. To this end, here we explore the thermal properties of black p and blue p, their temperature-dependent lattice constant, TEC, free energy and specific heat.

4.1.2 Thermal expansion and QHA

The thermal expansion is the expansion of a material's volume at finite temperature. As shown in Fig. 4.2, it is directly related to the asymmetry of the interatomic potential where the equilibrium position shifts towards the flatter side of the potential energy profile and stays far away from the steeper side as the temperature increases. Below we will see how we can include this anharmonic potential using an approximation. The thermal expansion coefficient $\alpha(T)$ is defined through the following formula:

$$\alpha(T) = \frac{1}{a_0(T)} \frac{da_0(T)}{dT}, \quad (4.1)$$

where T is the temperature, $a_0(T)$ is the equilibrium lattice parameter corresponding to the minimum of the Helmholtz free energy.

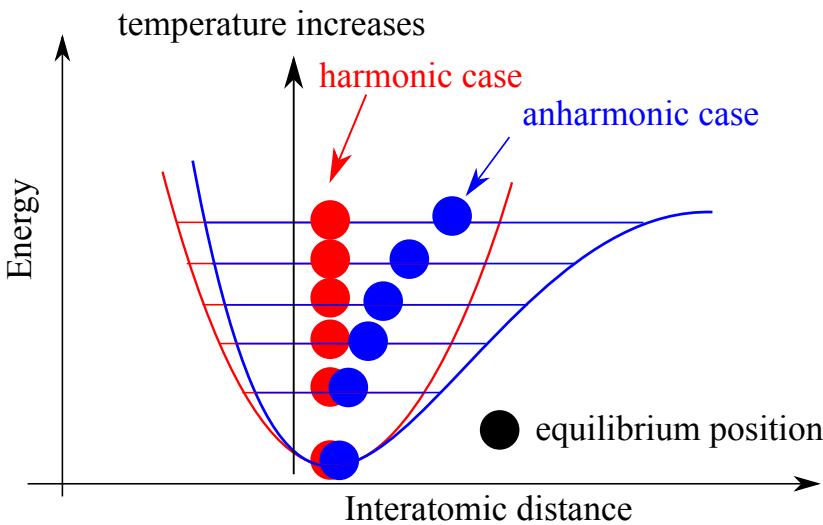


Fig. 4.2 Schematic illustration of the relation between asymmetric interatomic potential and thermal expansion.

In order to describe the thermal expansion within DFT, one needs to go beyond the harmonic approximation that is used to calculate the phonon frequency as we discussed in [chapter 3](#). The harmonic approximation gives infinite thermal conductivity, infinite phonon lifetimes and temperature-independent vibrational and elastic properties, which contradict to the experiment. The quasi-harmonic approximation [153–156] is a way to include the approximated anharmonic effect through volume-dependent frequencies within the non-interacting phonons approximation. Although it is an implicit inclusion of anharmonic effect, its dominant role in the thermal properties, that is two orders of magnitude larger than explicit anharmonic effects, make sure it can correctly describe the thermal properties up to melting point. Beyond this temperature, anharmonic effect will become important. QHA has been applied to various compounds from semiconductors to metals and to earth materials under extreme conditions[153, 157, 158]. In [Fig. 4.3](#), the applications of the QHA for graphite and graphene are shown. The agreement between experiment and QHA is good in a wide range of temperature up to 2000 K. Another interesting point is that the negative thermal expansion, where the $\alpha(T)$ is negative, is presented in both materials, especially, graphene keeps such a feature up to 2000 K. This is a common character of layered materials where layers are weakly bonded. The origin of this is related to the ZA mode in layered materials as discussed in [chapter 3](#). At low temperature,

ZA mode will be excited and this out-of-plane vibration effectively shrinks the in-plane dimension of the materials and thus gives negative thermal expansion.

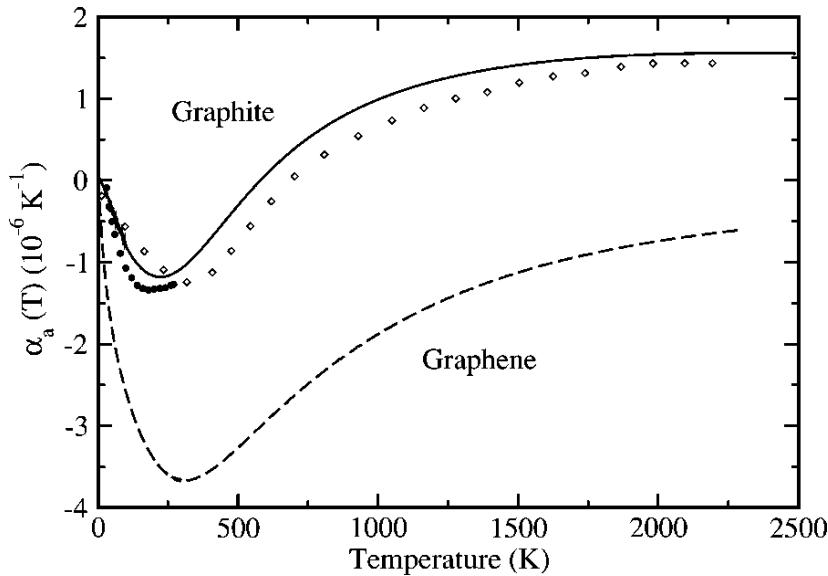


Fig. 4.3 TEC of graphite and graphene calculated using QHA (continuous line) and experimental result for graphite (points). Image source: [153]

Equilibrium lattice constants at any temperature $a_0(T)$ are calculated by direct minimization of the Helmholtz free energy $F(a, T)$ with respect to its independent lattice vector, i.e. in this case, **a** and **b** for black P, and **a** for blue P. For the minimization process, $F(a, T)$ is obtained by fitting the discrete data points of $F(a_i, T)$ to the third-order Birch-Murnaghan equation of state, where i is the label for different lattice constants or equivalently different strains. The $F(a_i, T)$ is constructed from $\omega_{\mathbf{q},j}^i$ and $E[a_i]$ through the following formula[153, 159]:

$$F(a_i, T) = E[a_i] + \sum_{\mathbf{q},j} \frac{\hbar\omega_{\mathbf{q},j}^i}{2} + k_B T \sum_{\mathbf{q},j} \ln \left(1 - \exp \left[-\frac{\hbar\omega_{\mathbf{q},j}^i}{k_B T} \right] \right). \quad (4.2)$$

Here, T is the temperature, k_B is the Boltzmann constant, $E[a_i]$ is the DFT ground state energy. $\omega_{\mathbf{q},j}^i$ is the phonon frequency at the \mathbf{q} point \mathbf{q} with band index j . The sums run over all \mathbf{q} points and all bands of the whole Brillouin zone. Since the structural instabilities arise especially for the armchair direction when under compressive strain values larger than 4%, the calculation of phonon dispersions for both structures are performed under small strains, namely $\pm 2\%$, in order

to evaluate $\omega_{\mathbf{q},j}^i$ and $E[a_j]$. Considering two independent lattice vectors **a** and **b** of black P two uniaxial strains are applied for these directions. While for blue P, only biaxial strain is applied to keep its hexagonal symmetry unchanged. The whole calculation process was carried out using the phonopy-qha script[160].

4.1.3 Computational details

Simulation program: VASP and Phonopy[161]

Energy cut-off: 500 eV

Pseudopotentials: PBE-GGA(PAW)

k points (Gamma centered): $15 \times 11 \times 1$ and $15 \times 15 \times 1$ for black P and blue P, respectively

Vacuum: 25 Å

Energy and force convergence criterion: 10^{-5} eV and 10^{-7} eV/Å, respectively

Supercell for phonon calculation: $7 \times 3 \times 1$ and $5 \times 5 \times 1$ for black P and blue P, respectively

q points for phonon calculation: $200 \times 200 \times 1$

4.1.4 Phonon modes and dispersion

Different from a pure planar graphene, black P and blue P have a buckled non-planar structure due to the sp^3 hybridization, yet all three structures share the same hexagonal lattice base. Given an almost identical local environment in the unit cell, see Fig. 4.1, it is not surprising that blue P and black P having similar total energy. The only significant difference is the plane, marked as grey shown in Fig. 4.1, on which the system extends to form an infinite 2D crystal. Therefore, thermal expansion on these different planes are expected to be different and will carry insight and information on the different finite temperature properties. The primitive unit cell of black P is a rectangular lattice with a four-atom basis and a space group of D_{2h}^7 , and that of blue P is a hexagonal lattice with a two-atom basis and a space group of D_{3d}^3 . Therefore, besides the three acoustic modes with the in-phase vibrations of atoms, there are nine and three optical modes for black P and blue P, respectively.

The calculated phonon dispersions along the high symmetric q lines corresponding to these modes are depicted in Fig. 4.4(a) and (b) for both structures. Parallel with the previous calculations [162, 163], the calculated phonon dispersions are free from imaginary frequencies, which ensures the structural stability of the materials. the lowest acoustic mode ZA displays a q^2 relation as we dis-

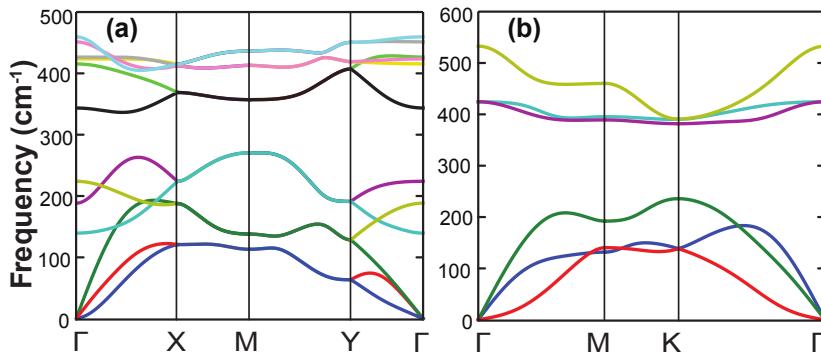


Fig. 4.4 Calculated phonon dispersions for pristine (a) black and (b) blue P. (c) Optical phonon modes together with their frequencies (in units of cm^{-1}) at the Γ point and irreducible representations for black P and blue P.

cussed in chapter 3. The other two acoustic modes, LA and TA, still have a linear dependence with respect to the q wavevector since the situation is the same here as in the bulk. The total frequency range of the phonon dispersion is larger by an amount of about 100 cm^{-1} in blue P as compared to black P. We will discuss more about the vibrational character of these phonon modes in a later chapters where we investigate the effect of strain on the frequency of the vibration.

4.1.5 Temperature-dependent thermal properties

The equilibrium lattice constants at zero K, a_0 and b_0 of black P and a_0 of blue P, are predicted as $a_0 = 3.298 \text{ \AA}$, $b_0 = 4.625 \text{ \AA}$, and $a_0 = 3.277 \text{ \AA}$, respectively, in good agreement with previously reported results ($a_0 = 3.297 \text{ \AA}$, $b_0 = 4.640 \text{ \AA}$ for black P[144, 164], and $a_0 = 3.330 \text{ \AA}$ for blue P[141]). The expansion of these lattice parameters due to zero-point vibration is around 0.2% at 0 K, which is smaller than that of other well-known 2D materials like graphene and *h*-BN, but it is comparable with that of MoS₂ and MoSe₂. This result is reasonable due to the difference in the maximum phonon frequency between these materials: that of graphene and *h*-BN is around 1600 cm^{-1} and that of MoS₂, MoSe₂, black P and a_0 of blue P is around 600 cm^{-1} .

The temperature dependence of the lattice constants $a_0(T)$, $b_0(T)$ and TEC $\alpha(T)$ of both structures are shown in Fig. 4.5. The anisotropic nature of the structure of black P leads to different lattice constant expansion rates. A faster thermal expansion along the armchair direction (i.e. **b**) is found, see Fig. 4.5(a).

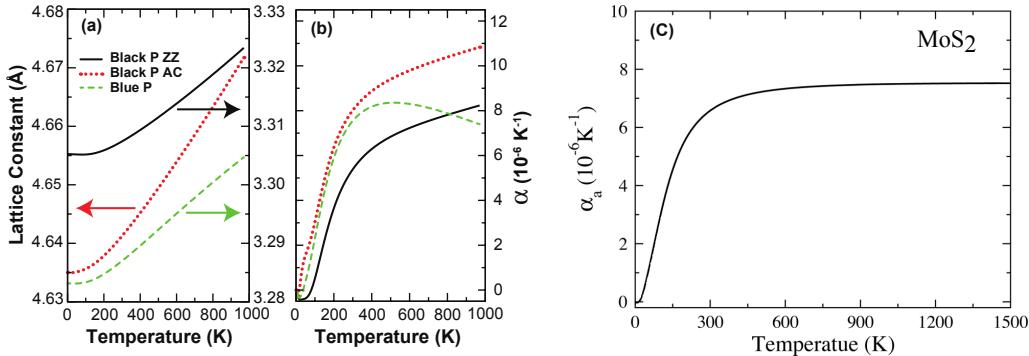


Fig. 4.5 (a) Lattice constants and (b) TEC as a function of temperature. Here, ZZ and AC are denoted for the zigzag and armchair directions, respectively. (c) TEC of monolayer MoS₂ for comparison from Ref. [155].

While a small negative TEC appears for all structures in all directions at temperatures lower than 100 K, black P along the zigzag direction has a more apparent negative expansion. The lattice constant of both phases varies linearly when $T > 200$ K, see Fig. 4.5(a). The TEC increases rapidly with temperature up to 300 K. After that, all TECs changes slowly with temperature starting from around 400 K in agreement with predictions for 2D-TMDs [154, 155], for example see Fig. 4.5(c) for monolayer MoS₂. Different from MoS₂, we do not observe any saturation of the TEC for black P at high temperatures. While black P expands at most 0.02 Å along the zigzag direction as T approaches 1000 K, it expands 0.04 Å along the armchair direction. As is clear from Fig. 4.1, a uniaxial expansion along the armchair direction may result in a structural phase transition from black P to blue P because of the similar hexagonal arrangement of P atoms[165].

In Fig. 4.6, the variation of the cohesive energy as a function of strain at 0 K (a) and the variation of the Helmholtz free energy (F(T)) as a function of temperature (b) are presented. In Fig. 4.6(b), we also show $\Delta F(T)$ which is defined as $\Delta F(T)=F_{blueP}(T) - F_{blackP}(T)$. Here, $F_{blueP}(T)$ and $F_{blackP}(T)$ are the Helmholtz free energy of black P and blue P, respectively. As the zero-point energy continuously decreases with strain from minus to plus, the variation of the zero-point energy results in an asymmetric behaviour in cohesive energy with strain. In addition, the curvature of this total energy gives the in-plane stiffness of the material as a measure of the response to mechanical deformation. It is clear that blue P is a stiffer material as compared to black P. Moreover, the de-

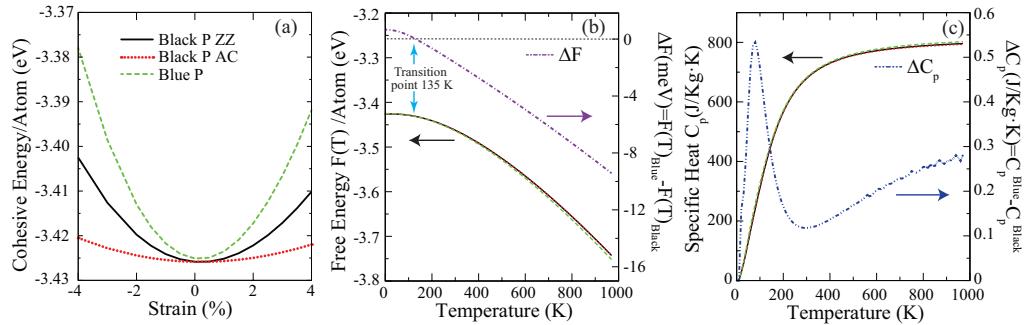


Fig. 4.6 (a) Cohesive energy, including zero point energy, as a function of applied strain at $T = 0$ K and (b) Helmholtz free energy ($F(T)$) as a function of temperature. Here, ZZ and AC are used for the zigzag and armchair directions, respectively. $\Delta F(T)$ is the difference between $F(T)$ of black P and blue P. The blue arrow (b) denotes the transition point, after which blue P becomes thermodynamically more stable over black P. The specific heat at constant pressure (C_p) and the difference (ΔC_p) between C_p of black P and blue P are shown in (c).

formation along the zigzag direction of black P is harder than that along the armchair direction at 0 K, and this is consistent with the finite temperature behaviour as we concluded from the previous section in connection with Fig. 4.5(a).

The $F(T)$ decreases as temperature increases due to the entropy term (the last term in equation (4.2)). Inclusion of the zero-point energy gives rise to a slightly higher ground state energy for blue P over black P since its optical phonon modes have larger frequencies. However, as temperature increases, a crossing of the free energy curves around 135 K occurs, which makes the blue P energetically more favorable at high temperatures, see Fig. 4.6(b). The free energy difference between the two phases is of the order of 4 meV at room temperature, meaning that the two phases can coexist. In addition, it is possible to observe a phase transition driven by temperature from black P to blue P or visa versa at $T=135$ K.

In Fig. 4.6(c), we present constant pressure heat capacity, C_p , results for both structures, which is generally a few percent different from constant volume heat capacity in similar structures[153]. The C_p difference (ΔC_p) between two phases is significantly small for the whole temperature range as represented with a blue dash-dot line in Fig. 4.6(c), which shows essentially very similar Debye temperature for these two different phases. At high temperatures, C_p approaches its classical value of $12 k_B$. When $T=300$ K, C_p already reaches about 80 % of its

classical value, meaning that most of the phonon modes are activated at this temperature.

4.1.6 Summary

In summary, we systematically investigated the lattice thermal properties of black and blue P. Similar to its electronic properties, black P has direction dependent mechanical and thermal properties. The calculated TEC demonstrates that a much larger expansion along the armchair direction with temperature is observed for black P. While black P is thermodynamically more stable than blue P, the latter becomes more stable when $T > 135$ K. Yet their free energy difference is small due to their structural similarities. It is possible to observe a structural phase transition from black P to blue P by increasing the temperature beyond 135 K, and therefore the coexistence of these two phases is possible.

4.2 Piezoelectric properties of 2D-TMDs and 2D-TMDOs²

4.2.1 Introduction

We have seen the general properties of 2D-TMDs in [chapter 1](#) and the vibrational and electronic properties of one member: 2D-MoS₂ in [chapter 3](#). When the S atom is replaced with O, TMDs become TMDOs, whose monolayers have similar properties as 2D-TMDs. Although 2D-TMDOs are proven to be stable, they have not been synthesised yet. Sharing similar electronic structure, 2D-TMDs and 2D-TMDOs already promise various potential applications, such as nanoelectronic and nanophotonic devices owe to their direct finite band gaps[[66](#), [166](#)]. In addition to these exciting applications, 2D-TMDs, in the noncentrosymmetric 2H crystal structure with D_{3h} symmetry, have also been shown to have remarkable piezoelectric properties that can then be used in pressure sensors, transducers, high voltage generators, energy harvesters, energy conversion and piezotronic applications. Many layered materials have a centrosymmetry which suppresses the piezoelectricity. However, this symmetry will be broken

²This work is published: [P5](#).

at the monolayer level, and then the piezoelectricity is recovered. For example, graphene preserves centrosymmetry as in graphite, or inversion symmetry, due to its non-polar nature, thus it does not display piezoelectricity; Whereas 2D-BN and 2D-TMDs break such symmetry and become noncentrosymmetric systems where piezoelectric effects can manifest themselves.

Duerloo et al. [167] calculated the piezoelectric properties of a single layer of BN, MoS₂, MoSe₂, MoTe₂, WS₂, WSe₂, and WTe₂ by using first-principles calculations. They reported that piezoelectricity of the 2D-TMDC monolayers in the H phase are comparable or even better than that of conventional bulk piezoelectric materials. Zhu et al. [168] reported experimental evidence of piezoelectricity in free-standing MoS₂ and they found that this material exhibits piezoelectricity for an odd number of layers in which case inversion symmetry is broken. Their measured piezoelectric coefficient is 2.9×10^{-10} C/m, which agrees well with previous theoretical calculations[167]. Similarly, by using DFT based theoretical calculations, it has been predicted that group IIIA monodichalcogenides, namely GaS, GaSe and InSe, have piezoelectric stress coefficients of 1.34×10^{-10} , 1.34×10^{-10} and 1.47×10^{-10} C/m, respectively[169]. In addition, reducing the dimensionality has been shown to enhance piezoelectricity in ZnO[170]. These studies indicate that TMDs are promising candidates as low dimensional piezoelectric materials.

Since previous calculations and experiments were only focused on Mo and W based TMDs, the potential of other 2D-TMDs and 2D-TMDOs for piezoelectric device applications have remained an open question so far. To reveal such potential, first principles calculations are performed in order to systematically investigate the piezoelectric properties of single layer 2H-MX₂ compounds, where M= Cr, Mo, W, Ti, Zr, Hf, Sn and X=O, S, Se, Te. Lattice parameters, atomic positions, electronic band-gap values, elastic stiffness constants (C_{11} and C_{12}), Young modulus (Y), Poisson's ratios (ν), piezoelectric stress coefficients (e_{11}) and piezoelectric strain coefficients (d_{11}) are calculated.

4.2.2 Piezoelectric constants

Piezoelectricity is the ability of some materials to generate an internal electric field in response to applied mechanical stress. Two types of piezoelectric phe-

nomena can be observed for piezoelectric materials: 1) direct piezoelectric effect: separation of opposite charge due to stress and 2) converse piezoelectric effect: occurrences of stress and strain under external electric field. In Fig. 4.7, the mechanism of direct piezoelectric effect is shown.

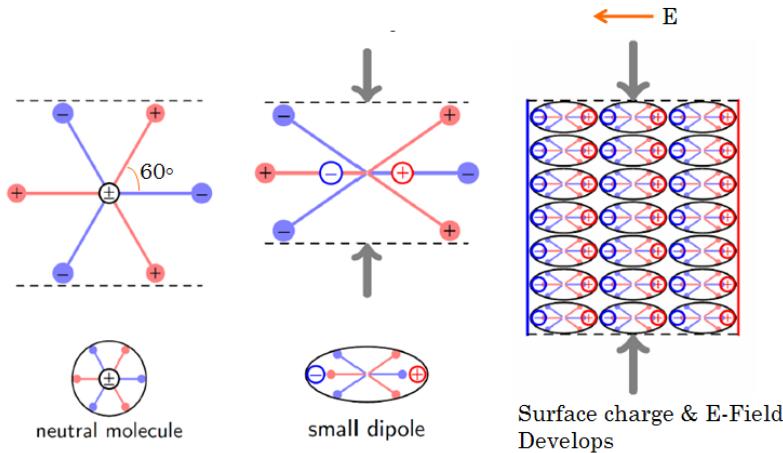


Fig. 4.7 Mechanism of direct piezoelectric effect. Image source: [171]

To investigate the piezoelectric properties, we follow the same theoretical approach as Ref. [167]. The piezoelectric tensor[172, 173], e_{ij} , can be defined in terms of the induced polarization in the direction i due to a strain (ε_j) change along the direction j as follows

$$e_{ij} = \partial P_i / \partial \varepsilon_j = \partial P_i / \partial \varepsilon_j |_u + \sum_k (\partial P_i / \partial u_{ik}) (\partial u_{ik} / \partial \varepsilon_j). \quad (4.3)$$

where P_i is the induced polarization along the direction i as a result of an applied strain ε_j along the direction j . The P_i is calculated using the Berry Phase approach[174] as implemented in the VASP package with applied uniform strain, ranging from 1 % to -1 % in steps of 0.5 %, along the armchair side of the rectangular cell. At this point, in order to apply strain in a desired direction, the hexagonal primitive cell structure of each material is transformed to a tetragonal one composed of two hexagonal primitive cells[167], see Fig. 4.8. The first term in equation (4.3) is the clamped-ion or homogeneous strain contribution to the piezoelectric tensor and it mainly arises from the electronic contribution. The second term represents the contribution from the internal relaxation of ions.

Here, u_{ik} is the fractional coordinate of the k^{th} atom along the i direction of the unit cell.

Since TMDs and TMDOs compounds have a non-centrosymmetric crystal structure, the inclusion of internal relaxation becomes essential in order to obtain realistic piezoelectric properties. In addition, it is clear that the relaxed-ion piezoelectric coefficients are experimentally relevant quantities that can be measured. From the theoretical point of view, since the relaxed-ion piezoelectric coefficients include both electronic and relaxation effects, the calculation of the clamped-ion piezoelectric coefficients helps to separate the electronic and relaxation contributions from the relaxed-ion piezoelectric coefficients. The number of independent piezoelectric tensor coefficients is deduced from the symmetry of the crystal. For TMDs and TMDOs, we only need to calculate the e_{11} component of the piezoelectric stress tensor. e_{11} relates in-plane strain to in-plane electrical polarization. The piezoelectric coefficient e_{31} is zero due to the presence of an inversion centre between the two layers of chalcogenides. However, it is found to be non-zero for the unsymmetrical H and F co-decorated graphene[175, 176].

The corresponding piezoelectric strain tensor (d_{11}) of each material is predicted from the following relation[167]:

$$d_{11} = e_{11}/(C_{11} - C_{12}). \quad (4.4)$$

For each applied strain, the ions are kept in their strained positions or allowed to relax to their new equilibrium positions, and consequently the clamped-ion or relaxed-ion piezoelectric properties are calculated, respectively.

4.2.3 Computational details

Simulation program: VASP

Energy cut-off: 600 eV

Pseudopotentials: PBE-GGA(PAW), HSE06

k points (Gamma centered): $26 \times 26 \times 1$

Vacuum: 15 Å

Energy and force convergence criterion: 10^{-3} eV and 10^{-7} eV/Å, respectively

strain applied: 1% to -1% in steps of 0.5%

stress and force: finite displacement method

polarization: Berry Phase expression [174] in VASP

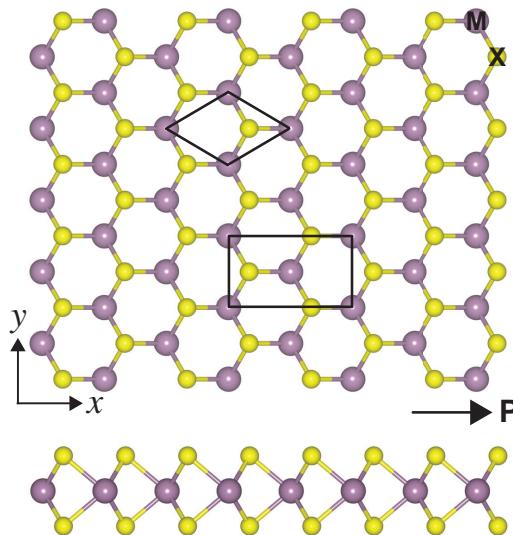


Fig. 4.8 Top and side views of MX_2 where $\text{M} = \text{Cr}, \text{Mo}, \text{W}, \text{Ti}, \text{Zr}, \text{Hf}, \text{Sn}$ and $\text{X} = \text{O}, \text{S}, \text{Se}, \text{Te}$. P denotes the direction of the polarization. Piezoelectric calculations are done in a rectangular cell.

4.2.4 Accurate band gaps from HSE06 hybrid functional

It is mandatory that a piezoelectric material has to be an insulator or semiconductor with a sufficiently wide band gap to avoid current leakage. Thus, we first calculate the electronic properties of twenty eight single layer MX_2 compounds, where $\text{M} = \text{Cr}, \text{Mo}, \text{W}, \text{Ti}, \text{Zr}, \text{Hf}, \text{Sn}$ and $\text{X} = \text{O}, \text{S}, \text{Se}, \text{Te}$. We discard the metallic structures, namely SnSe_2 , SnTe_2 , and TiTe_2 . Actually, G_0W_0 calculations predicted that 2H-TiTe₂ is a small band gap semiconductor material[177]. Since semi-local functionals are used in the Berry's phase calculations, 2H-TiTe₂ is excluded. For electronic structure calculations, we also applied the HSE06 hybrid functionals in order to obtain realistic electronic band gap values for TMDs and TMDOs. Fig. 4.9 shows the calculated PBE-GGA and HSE06 band gap values E_{gap} . The materials, except Cr, Mo, and W based TMDs, have indirect band gaps and the predicted values and trends are in good agreement with previous theoretical calculations[167, 178, 179]. Generally, the band gap increases when moving upwards in the chalcogens family from Te to S and with increasing atomic number in the transition metals. However, the latter trend is only partially valid when the compounds with O are included. The difference is that within the same row of

the transition metals, TMDOs with a larger atomic number tend to have smaller band gaps which is in contrast to the TMDs case.

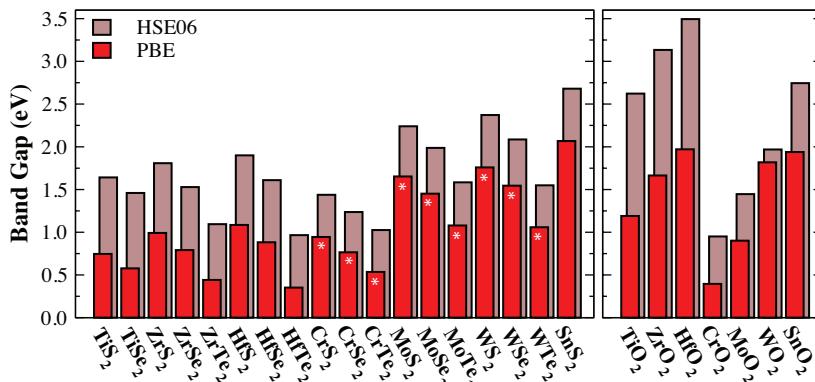


Fig. 4.9 The calculated PBE-GGA and HSE06 E_{gap} values for TMDs and TMDOs. Here, the white * sign indicates that it is a direct band gap material.

4.2.5 Elastic constants

As previously mentioned, we need to calculate the elastic constants in order to obtain the piezoelectric strain, d_{11} coefficients, see [equation \(4.4\)](#). Therefore, the relaxed-ion and clamped-ion elastic stiffness coefficients (C_{11} and C_{12}), Young modulus ($Y = (C_{11}^2 - C_{12}^2)/C_{11}$) and Poisson's ratios ($\nu = C_{12}/C_{11}$) for all 2D-TMDC and 2D-TMDO materials considered in this study are obtained and are listed in [table 4.1](#). Our results are in good agreement with available data[135, 167, 180, 181]. The first observation from [table 4.1](#) is that C_{11} , C_{12} and Y decrease with increasing row number of the chalcogenide atom. Except Zr, in each chalcogenide group, the MX_2 monolayer becomes stiffer with increase of the row number of the metal atom. Structures considered in this study are found to be less stiff when compared to graphene ($Y=341$ N/m)[154] and single layer *h*-BN ($Y=275.9$ N/m)[154]. Also it should be noticed that the calculated elastic constants are positive and satisfy the Born stability criteria for crystals having hexagonal symmetry[131, 182]. Note that the relaxed-ion elastic constants, i.e. C_{11} and C_{12} , are always smaller than the clamped-ion ones since the internal relaxation of ions allows to release some of the stress in the former, see [table 4.1](#).

Table 4.1 Calculated clamped and relaxed-ion elastic constants (in units of N/m), Young modulus Y (in units of N/m) and Poisson's ratio ν .

Material	Clamped Ion				Relaxed Ion			
	C_{11}	C_{12}	Y	ν	C_{11}	C_{12}	Y	ν
TiS ₂	100.3	34.2	88.6	0.34	89.9	28.6	80.8	0.32
TiSe ₂	84.8	29.3	74.7	0.35	74.4	24.4	66.4	0.33
ZrS ₂	96.3	37.7	81.5	0.39	84.2	31.8	72.2	0.38
ZrSe ₂	83.3	31.0	71.8	0.37	71.4	26.0	61.9	0.36
ZrTe ₂	66.2	22.8	58.35	0.34	53.1	18.6	46.6	0.35
HfS ₂	104.4	39.1	89.8	0.37	92.8	33.8	80.5	0.36
HfSe ₂	89.7	32.2	78.1	0.36	78.8	27.8	69.0	0.35
HfTe ₂	71.0	23.5	63.2	0.33	59.3	19.7	52.8	0.33
CrS ₂	136.9	42.6	123.6	0.31	120.6	32.3	111.9	0.27
CrSe ₂	111.3	37.5	98.7	0.34	96.6	28.9	87.9	0.30
CrTe ₂	86.5	32.7	74.1	0.38	73.0	25.8	63.9	0.30
MoS ₂	157.2	50.1	141.2	0.32	132.7	33.0	124.5	0.25
MoSe ₂	133.2	40.8	120.7	0.31	106.9	25.6	100.8	0.24
MoTe ₂	106.3	32.8	96.2	0.31	84.1	19.8	79.4	0.24
WS ₂	174.7	51.9	159.3	0.30	146.5	31.8	139.6	0.22
WSe ₂	147.4	41.1	135.9	0.28	102.4	23.1	115.9	0.23
WTe ₂	115.4	31.6	106.8	0.27	89.2	15.7	86.4	0.18
SnS ₂	92.8	23.1	87.1	0.25	91.0	22.2	85.6	0.24
TiO ₂	178.9	80.9	142.3	0.45	173.7	75.7	141.7	0.44
ZrO ₂	163.5	83.0	121.5	0.51	157.4	77.5	119.2	0.49
HfO ₂	181.7	86.7	140.3	0.48	174.2	81.5	136.1	0.47
CrO ₂	233.8	87.4	201.1	0.37	218.6	74.4	193.3	0.34
MoO ₂	253.3	104.0	210.6	0.41	230.2	84.5	199.2	0.37
WO ₂	286.2	109.0	244.7	0.38	261.2	87.8	231.7	0.34
SnO ₂	165.7	52.4	149.1	0.32	160.2	53.3	142.5	0.33

4.2.6 Piezoelectric stress/strain coefficients

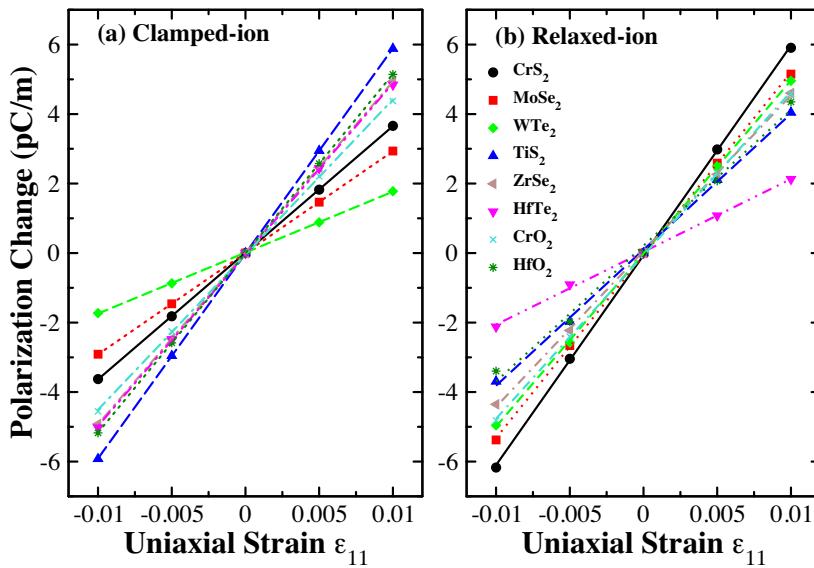


Fig. 4.10 (a) Clamped-ion and (b) relaxed-ion polarization change under applied uniaxial strain (ϵ_{11}) along the x direction for the selected 2D-TMDs and 2D-TMDOs structures. Piezoelectric coefficient is determined from the slope of the curves.

Piezoelectric coefficients (e_{11}) are derived from the slope of the polarization change in Fig. 4.10 with applied uniform strain, ranging from 0.01 % to -0.01 % in steps of 0.005 %, along the armchair side of the rectangular cell via Berry's Phase approximation[174]. The clamped-ion and relaxed-ion d_{11} coefficients are obtained by using the calculated e_{11} coefficients, and the elastic constants (C_{11} and C_{12}) via equation (4.4). Fig. 4.11 shows the calculated e_{11} and d_{11} coefficients for both TMDs and TMDOs. The materials are ordered along the x -axis by considering the period and group number of the transition metal element in the periodic table. The predicted relaxed-ion e_{11} and d_{11} coefficients are consistent with the available reference data[167, 183], see results for Cr, Mo and W based TMDs, which are comparable with the piezoelectric properties of single layer and bulk h -BN[167, 184–186]. In addition, the relaxed-ion e_{11} coefficient of single layer MoS₂ (4.91×10^{-10} C/m) is comparable with the experimentally measured piezoelectric coefficient of 2.90×10^{-10} C/m[168] and agrees well with the reported value of 3.64×10^{-10} C/m.[167]. In addition, the trends found for the e_{11} and d_{11} coeffi-

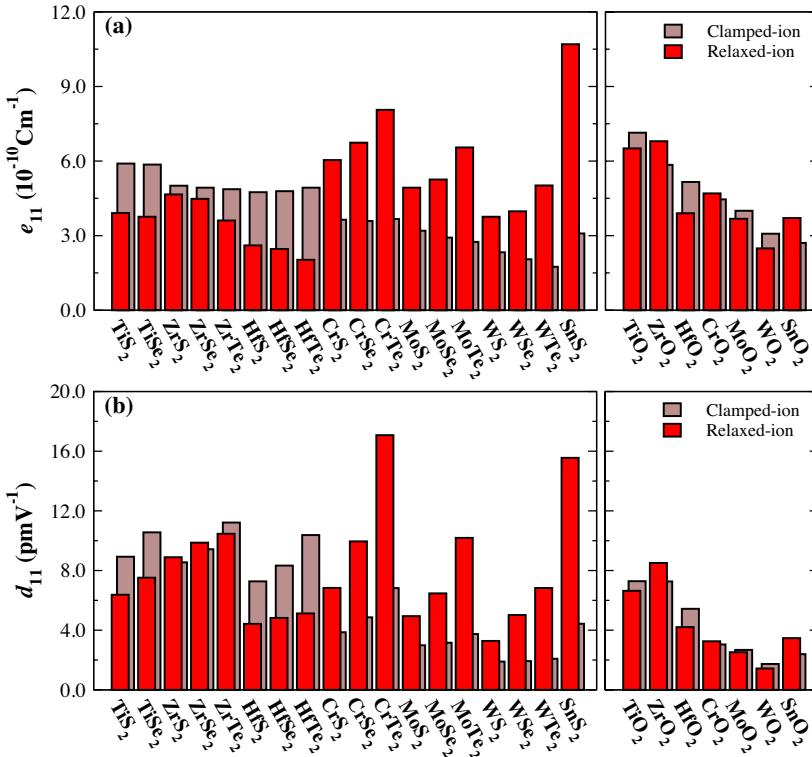


Fig. 4.11 The calculated clamped and relaxed-ion (a) piezoelectric stress (e_{11}) and (b) piezoelectric strain (d_{11}) coefficients.

cients of Mo and W based TMDs are consistent with those found in Ref.[167]. The difference between our calculated piezoelectric coefficients and previous calculations is likely due to the use of different pseudopotentials, small differences in elastic constants, and other computational parameters (for instance k -mesh).

SnS_2 has the highest e_{11} coefficient for the relaxed-ion ($10.7 \times 10^{-10} \text{ C/m}$) calculation. WO_2 has the smallest relaxed-ion piezoelectric stress coefficient ($2.49 \times 10^{-10} \text{ C/m}$) among TMDOs and WTe_2 has the smallest clamped-ion piezoelectric stress coefficient ($1.75 \times 10^{-10} \text{ C/m}$). From Fig. 4.11, we predict several periodic trends in clamped-ion e_{11} and d_{11} coefficients for TMDC and TMDO monolayers. The clamped-ion e_{11} coefficients of TMDs usually increase when moving from right to left in the periodic table (i.e., from CrX_2 to TiX_2) and upward in an individual group of both transition metal and chalcogen atoms. This trend is nearly the same for TMDOs. However, for TMDs, the trend (i.e., the increase in the calculated clamped-ion e_{11} coefficients when moving upward in

the group of chalcogen elements) becomes reversed for the relaxed-ion calculations of group VIB elements as clearly seen in Fig. 4.11(a). The clamped and relaxed ion d_{11} coefficients increase when moving downward in the group of chalcogen elements (i.e. from S to Te) in each metal group. This trend can be correlated to the polarizability of chalcogen atoms since the atoms are easily polarized when going downward in a specific group of the periodic table. We notice that the chalcogenide atoms have a much larger impact on the d_{11} coefficients as compared to the metal atoms. Especially in group VI, the d_{11} coefficient is maximized if one uses a smaller metal atom and a larger chalcogen atom. In group IVB, Zr does not exhibit the same trend that is found for the group VIB elements. This is partially because the C_{11} elastic constant of Zr based TMDs for a particular chalcogen atom is smaller than that of Ti and Hf based TMDs. Since TMDOs pose larger elastic constants, they usually have smaller d_{11} coefficients as compared to TMDs. In other words, the stronger the material the smaller the d_{11} coefficient.

Among the group VIB elements (i.e., Cr, Mo and W), Cr based TMDs and TMDOs are found to have much better piezoelectric properties in each chalcogenide group and CrTe_2 possesses the largest relaxed-ion e_{11} ($8.06 \times 10^{-10} \text{ C/m}$) and d_{11} (17.1 pm/V) coefficients. On the other hand, the relaxed-ion e_{11} and d_{11} coefficients of SnS_2 are almost the same as those of CrTe_2 . The predicted relaxed-ion e_{11} values are much larger than the values previously predicted for surface decorated graphene structures[187]. Furthermore, when the piezoelectric coefficients of the extensively used bulk piezoelectric materials, namely 2.3 pm/V for α -quartz[188], 3.1 pm/V for wurtzite GaN[189] and 5.1 pm/V for AlN[189], are considered, we predict that TMDs and TMDOs have comparable or even larger relaxed-ion piezoelectric coefficients.

4.2.7 Importance of internal relaxation

It is essential to discuss the effect of the internal relaxation on the piezoelectric properties of TMDs and TMDOs. Relaxing the ion positions after applying strain significantly reduces (increases) the polarization of the Ti, Zr and Hf (Cr, Mo and W) based TMDs. As a result, the clamped-ion piezoelectric coefficients of the Ti, Zr and Hf (Cr, Mo and W) based TMDs monolayers are much larger (smaller) than

that of the relaxed-ion coefficients. This means that the electronic contribution, i.e. the first term in [equation \(4.3\)](#), and strain contribution, i.e. the second term in [equation \(4.3\)](#), have opposite (the same) sign for the Ti, Zr and Hf (Cr, Mo and W) based TMDs. The calculated elastic constants suggest that Ti, Zr and Hf based TMDs are more brittle materials that are expected to exhibit larger response to an applied strain, thereby giving rise to higher clamped-ion piezoelectric constants. For TMDOs, the contribution of internal relaxation to the e_{11} coefficient decreases when moving downward in an individual metal group. However, in each chalcogen group, the internal relaxation becomes generally less important when going from Te to S. This can be attributed to the large strain-induced ionic motion in response to an applied strain. In other words, after applying strain, the amount of the internal relaxation of the chalcogen atoms increases from S to Te, giving rise to a larger internal relaxation contribution to the piezoelectric coefficients in Te based TMDs. Since Te is the most easily polarizable atom among the chalcogenide atoms (due to its larger size), the polarization effects (and hence electronic contribution to the e_{11} coefficient) are found to be large in Te based TMDs as compared to S and Se counterparts. However, the increase in piezoelectricity effects competes with the degradation of stability.

4.2.8 Summary

In summary, we presented a detailed theoretical investigation of the piezoelectric properties of semiconductor TMDC and TMDO monolayers. Our calculations show that TMDC and TMDO structures are strong candidates for future atomically thin piezoelectric applications. We show that Ti, Zr, Sn and Cr based TMDs and TMDOs have much better piezoelectric properties as compared to Mo and W based TMDs and TMDOs and the well-known conventional bulk piezoelectric materials. The usage of these 2D piezoelectric materials in ultra sensitive sensors, low-power electronics and nanoscale electromechanical systems are expected to have an impact on the size reduction, weight and energy consumption of such devices.

4.3 Magnetic properties of penta-hexa-graphene³

4.3.1 Introduction

In chapter 1, we have seen graphene derivatives [190, 191] are also subject of intensive research to either modify their known properties or to increase their functionality. Considering the very low SOC and long spin relaxation time in these systems, substantial effort has been devoted to the induction of magnetism in these metal-free materials with the aim for future spintronic devices[192, 193]. Intrinsic magnetism in graphene is absent, but extrinsic magnetism has been achieved by means of partial hydrogenation[42, 194], foreign atom substitution[195, 196] and the introduction of defects[197, 198].

Three types of orbital hybridization are usually found in carbon allotropes, namely sp , sp^2 and sp^3 . While graphene is made of a network of sp^2 hybridized atoms connected through σ and π bonds of p_z orbitals, diamond is exclusively held together by σ bonds between sp^3 bonded atoms. Another class of carbon allotropes is formed by the graphynes and graphdiynes[199, 200]. These flat materials contain a mixture of sp and sp^2 hybridized C atoms. Structures containing a mixture of sp^2 and sp^3 atoms, such as penta-graphene[201], have been studied as well. This last structure contains a mixture of threefold and fourfold coordinated C atoms. This leads to a distorted structure with non-ideal bond angles that has higher formation energy than the non-distorted graphene and diamond crystals with their ideal planar and tetrahedral bonding geometry. Therefore, a system with a local bond structure resembling that of graphene or diamond will have lower energy.

None of the above mentioned materials are magnetic because they contain only paired electrons. Local magnetic moments usually originate from lone electrons that are not involved in chemical bonding. Single atomic defects such as vacancies break covalent bonds and create lone electrons that give rise to magnetism. It is interesting to investigate whether a structural modification with a proper mixing of three- and fourfold coordinated C atoms can lead to local magnetic moments in a stable crystalline structure. In this work, we propose such a new type of 2D carbon allotrope with non-trivial magnetic properties. This

³This work is published: P8.

structure is composed of a mixture of pentagonal and hexagonal rings of carbon atoms and will be called penta-hexa-graphene (ph-graphene). This new material has an antiferromagnetic (AFM) ground state which transforms to a ferromagnetic (FM) state under strain. The latter state is protected by a small strain-induced energy barrier. These findings can initiate further research to induce magnetism and spin-flip barriers through strain in other metal-free 2D materials.

While finishing this work, Zhang et al. [202] reported our proposed structure in their supplementary materials. However, a detailed study of the physical properties, especially the magnetic properties, of this structure was not reported.

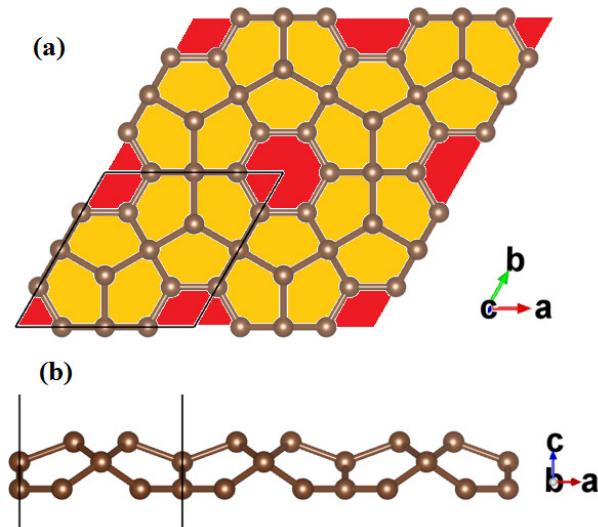


Fig. 4.12 Atomic structure of a 2×2 supercell of monolayer ph-graphene. (a) Top view with hexagonal and pentagonal rings marked with red and yellow color, respectively; (b) Side view of the buckled structure. (Visualisation using VESTA [203])

4.3.2 Computational details

Simulation program: VASP

Energy cut-off: 500 eV

Pseudopotentials: PBE-GGA(PAW)

k points (Gamma centered): $15 \times 15 \times 1$

Vacuum: 25 Å

Energy and force convergence criterion: 10^{-8} eV and 10^{-7} eV/Å, respectively

Supercell for phonon calculation: $3 \times 3 \times 1$

phonon calculation: DFPT

4.3.3 Bond hybridization and magnetic moment

The structure of the proposed 2D material is schematically shown in Fig. 4.12. It consists of hexagonal rings of C atoms surrounded by six pentagonal rings which share one edge with the hexagon and four with other pentagons. These hexagonal and pentagonal rings are arranged in a hexagonal lattice to form an infinite monolayer sheet. Considering the complex structure of this system, it is important to understand the hybridization of the electronic orbitals. For this, we calculate the hybridization index of the three C atoms that have a unique local environment, namely C1, C2 and C3 in Fig. 4.13, through Coulson's theorem: $1 + \sqrt{n_1 n_2} \cos\theta_{12} = 0$, where θ_{12} is the interorbital angle between orbital 1 and 2 (see Fig. 4.13) and n is the hybridization index. n corresponds to the index in the sp^n notation and determines the relative fraction of p orbitals with respect to the s orbital. The sum of the s fractions in all hybridized orbitals should equal 1, while it should be 3 for the sum of the p fractions.

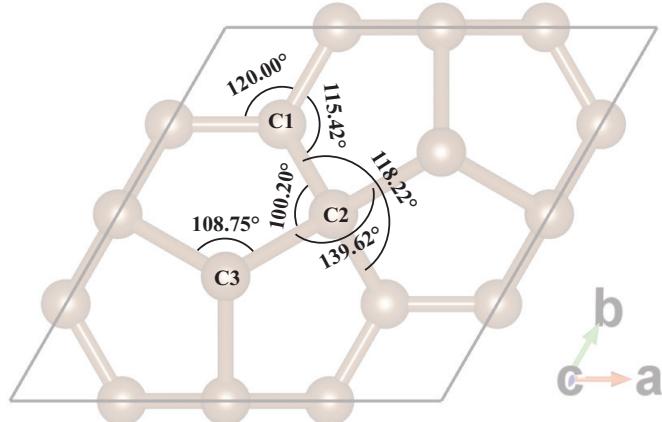


Fig. 4.13 Bond angles in the unit cell of monolayer ph-graphene.

In table 4.2, we list the hybridization indices of the C1 and C3 orbitals, φ . The C1 atom has two sp^2 orbitals with 120° interorbital angle and one $sp^{2.72}$. The latter gives rise to a partly buckled structure. The fourth C1 orbital has a large

Table 4.2 Orbital hybridization indices of the C atoms in ph-graphene.

Atom	φ_1	φ_2	φ_3	φ_4
C1	2.00	2.00	2.72	14.58
C3	3.11	3.11	3.11	2.70

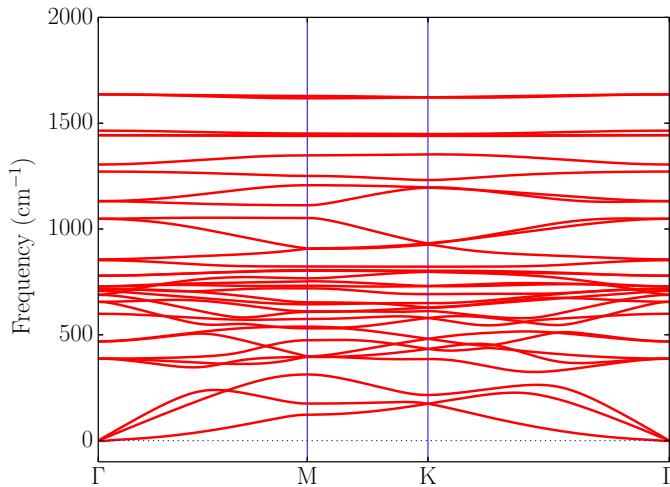


Fig. 4.14 Phonon dispersion relation of monolayer ph-graphene.

p contribution, indicating that it is close to a p_z orbital with little s contribution, and induces π bonding in the hexagonal rings. The C2 atoms have fourfold coordination and their hybridization should be close to sp^3 . Due to geometric constraints, the bonds have strained angles[119]. Finally, the C3 atom has four quasi- sp^3 orbitals of which three are used for nearest-neighbor σ bonding. The electron in the fourth orbital remains unpaired and can give a local magnetic moment of $1 \mu_B$ (Bohr magneton). There are two C3 atoms per unit cell which form a graphene-like subcrystal. The maximal magnetic moment per unit cell is therefore $2\mu_B$ if the system is ferromagnetic. However, when we align these two magnetic moments antiparallel, the total energy is lowered by 12 meV per magnetic atom, which gives an AFM ground state.

In comparison to penta-graphene, ph-graphene has a 76 mev/atom lower formation energy. However, it is about 0.9 eV/atom higher than that of graphene. The relatively high formation energy of ph-graphene as compared to graphene

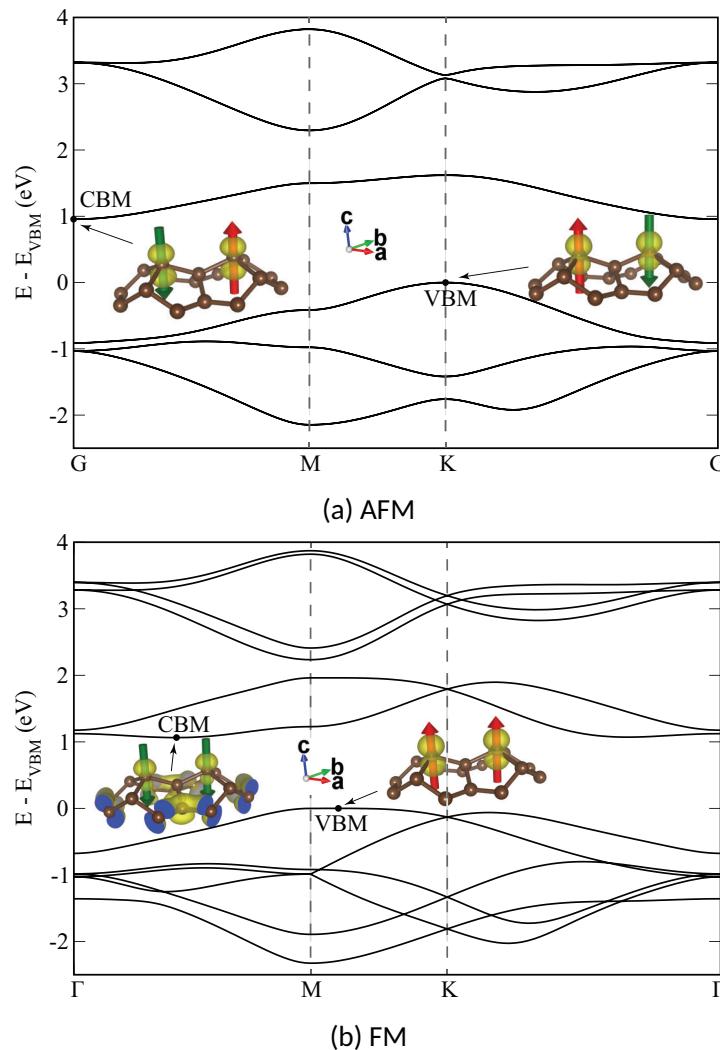


Fig. 4.15 Electronic band structure of monolayer ph-graphene. The charge densities at the VBM and CBM in the unit cell are shown as insets. The arrows on the atoms indicate the orientation of their magnetic moments.

can be mainly attributed to the “bent” bonds of the C2 atoms due to geometric constraints.

To check the dynamical stability of the ph-graphene structure we calculated its phonon spectrum (see Fig. 4.14). Since there are no imaginary frequencies, we can conclude that the structure is dynamically stable.

The electronic band structure and the charge densities at the VBM and CBM are shown in Fig. 4.15. Both the FM and AFM states exhibit indirect semiconducting character with a band gap (PBE) of 1.06 eV and 0.96 eV, respectively. The band edge states are mainly located on the magnetic atoms and the band gap separates states of opposite spin orientation. The hybridized φ_4 states (see above) on these atoms form a π bonding network that resembles the p_z π bonding in graphene. For the FM state, the typical graphene-like band structure that results from this can be observed for the valence and conduction bands. These bands are separated due to the ferromagnetic exchange splitting in spin-up and spin-down states with a large gap in between. Note that the splitting between bonding and anti-bonding states at the Γ point is strongly reduced with respect to graphene because of the larger interatomic distance separating the C3 atoms (3.1 Å in ph-graphene vs 1.4 Å in graphene). Due to this increased bonding distance, the exchange interaction exceeds the bonding interaction and the system is magnetic in stark contrast to graphene where the π bonding is much stronger.

4.3.4 Summary

In this work, we proposed a new type of stable monolayer carbon allotrope composed of pentagonal and hexagonal rings of carbon atoms. We explained the symmetry and the structure of the bonds that result in local magnetic moments. By comparing the total energy of the FM and AFM state, we conclude that the latter is the ground state. Our theoretical calculations give insight in the magnetic mechanism in this metal-free material, which can initiate further work on the exploration of magnetic properties of other 2D metal-free material.

4.4 Lithium battery related properties of MXenes/ graphene heterostructure⁴

4.4.1 Introduction

Lithium ion batteries (LIBs) are widely used for electrochemical energy storage in electrical vehicles and portable electronic devices such as cell phones. In fact, the speed of the development in these state of the art products mostly hinges on the progress in battery technology. In the current state, energy densities and rate capabilities of both LIBs and sodium ion batteries (NIBs) are insufficient to satisfy customers' needs. Therefore, the demand for metal based new generation batteries that have large reversible energy/power capacity, good cyclic stability and long life span is growing day by day. Recently, rechargeable batteries based on 2D materials have garnered great attention because of their promising potential as anode materials with enhanced gravimetric and volumetric energy densities which is a key challenge in current rechargeable ion battery technology. For instance Mo₂C was shown to exhibit much better electrochemical properties in lithium-ion battery applications,[204]. Moreover, other 2D layered materials such as TMDs,[205, 206], black phosphorus[207, 208], and MXenes (with M = Ti, V, Nb, Mo and X = C, N)[209–211] were also widely investigated because of their high energy storage density and high rate capacity. However, experimental studies have shown that single type layered nanosheets inevitably restack during the cycling process, resulting in a rapid capacity fading and poor rate performance.

Therefore, current interest has been directed towards heterostructured[212, 213] 2D materials. A plausible design of vertical heterostructures from different 2D materials is expected to be beneficial for providing rapid electron transport and the acceleration of cation transport in the electrodes, and thus is expected to improve the rate performance in current battery technology[213]. In addition, the negligible volumetric changes of in particular TMDs and MXenes under lithiation/de-lithiation processes, such that there is only 5% in-plane lattice expansion in the Mo₂C lattice caused by Li intercalation[214], can minimize the intrinsic volumetric changes during charging/discharging processes and prolongs cycling lifetime of the rechargeable batteries. Also, combining different 2D mate-

⁴This work is submitted: P10.

rials is a promising way to adjust the interlayer distance to accommodate much larger (Na^+) and more polarized (Mg^{2+}) ions. For instance, lithium-ion capacity in excess of 750 mAh g^{-1} ^[215] has already been demonstrated for batteries with MXene flakes electrodes, optimized with CNTs.

To this end, we systematically investigated Li intercalation in vertical (vdWs) heterostructures of MXenes and graphene for rechargeable battery applications. We only considered functionalized MXenes with OH and O, since the experimentally synthesized MXenes are often functionalized with various radicals due to the mainly used chemical exfoliation process in synthesis. In addition, MXenes with low formula weights, such as Ti_2C , Nb_2C , V_2C and Sc_2C have been found to be most promising^[211] materials for battery allocations due to their theoretically stated gravimetric capacity, which represents the amount of charge that can be stored per gram of material. Therefore, we considered only M_2CX_2 (where M=Sc, Ti, V and X=OH, O) monolayers in this study. V_2CX_2 is particularly important since it shows the highest Li^+ capacity of all MXenes tested under similar conditions^[216]. Another advantage is that, compared to bilayer M_2CX_2 , M_2CX_2 /graphene heterostructure has much smaller weight, offering much larger storage capacity.

We introduce the following nomenclature in the following sections: M stands for the transition metal in MXenes; X stands for the functionalized group, i.e. OH or O; Gr stands for graphene; Li is intercalated Li atom (unless the concentration is stated it means only single Li atom intercalation); Monolayer and bilayer are denoted with mono- or bi- prefixes; For instance: bi- $\text{Ti}_2\text{CO}_2+\text{Li}$ stands for bilayer Ti_2CO_2 with a single Li atom intercalation, and $\text{Ti}_2\text{CO}_2+\text{Gr}+\text{Li}$ stands for heterostructure of Ti_2CO_2 on graphene with a single Li atom intercalation.

4.4.2 Computational details

Simulation program: VASP

Energy cut-off: 500 eV

Pseudopotentials: PBE-GGA(PAW)

k points (Γ centered): $7\times7\times1$ to $11\times11\times1$

Vacuum: 30 Å

Energy and force convergence criterion: 10^{-5} eV and 10^{-3} eV/Å, respectively

vdW interactions: DFT-D3 method Grimme et al. [217] including Becke-Jonson damping

Charge analysis: Bader analysis [218–221]

In addition, we calculated diffusion barriers for Li ions using the climbing-image nudge elastic (cNEB) method as implemented in the VASP transition state tools[222, 223]. The cNEB method is an efficient method to determine the minimum energy diffusion path between two given positions. We used at least 7 images, including initial and final positions, for cNEB calculations. The atomic positions and energy of the images were then relaxed until the largest norm of the force orthogonal to the path is smaller than 0.01 eV/Å.

4.4.3 heterostructure stacking types

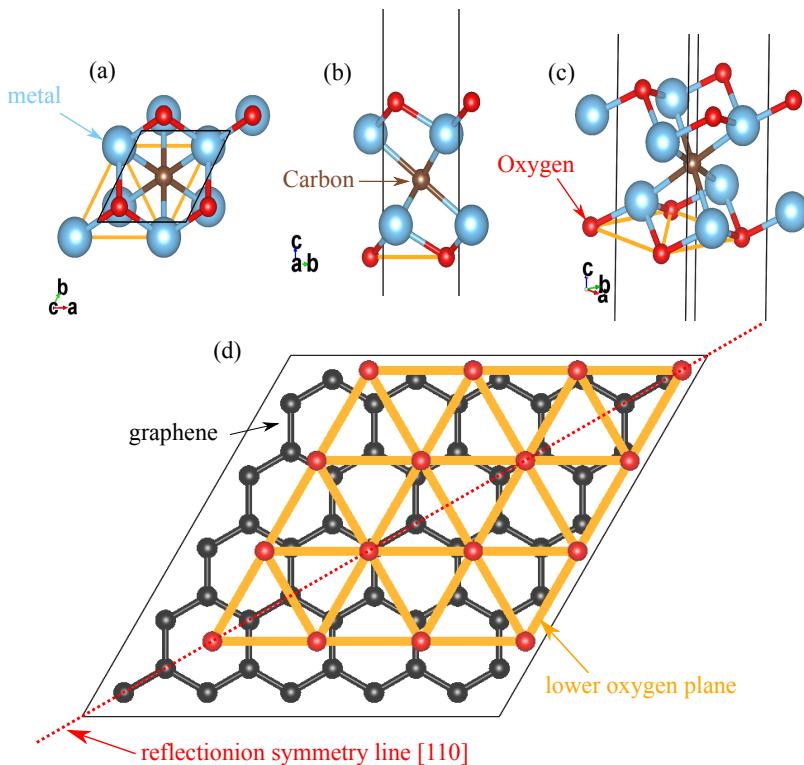


Fig. 4.16 An example structure of mono-Ti₂CO₂ presenting in (a) top view, (b) side view and (c) tilted view. (d) Simplified example structure of M₂CX₂+Gr heterostructure in ground state stacking.

First of all, we need to construct the heterostructure. To minimize the lattice mismatch between layers, we constructed the heterostructures with a 3×3

Table 4.3 A comparison of different MXenes systems: monolayer, bilayer, heterostructure. d is the interlayer distance and is defined as shown in Fig. 4.17. E_b is binding energy of the system with respect to its components, e.g bilayer with respect to monolayers. Only the ground state stacking of M_2CX_2+Gr is reported.

Material	Structure	d Å	E_b eV/atom
graphene	bi-Gr (AB)	3.277	-0.024
	bi-Gr (AA)	3.325	-0.020
Sc_2CO_2	bi- Sc_2CO_2	2.294	-0.029
	Sc_2CO_2+Gr	3.067	-0.022
$Sc_2C(OH)_2$	bi- $Sc_2C(OH)_2$	0.598	-0.025
	$Sc_2C(OH)_2+Gr$	2.191	-0.027
Ti_2CO_2	bi- Ti_2CO_2	2.396	-0.027
	Ti_2CO_2+Gr	3.000	-0.018
$Ti_2C(OH)_2$	bi- $Ti_2C(OH)_2$	0.399	-0.024
	$Ti_2C(OH)_2+Gr$	2.097	-0.034
V_2CO_2	bi- V_2CO_2	2.394	-0.025
	V_2CO_2+Gr	2.867	-0.022
$V_2C(OH)_2$	bi- $V_2C(OH)_2$	0.398	-0.011
	$V_2C(OH)_2+Gr$	2.779	-0.035

supercell of Sc_2CO_2 or $Sc_2C(OH)_2$ with a 4×4 supercell of graphene, a 4×4 supercell of Ti_2CO_2 or $Ti_2C(OH)_2$ with a 5×5 supercell of graphene, and a 5×5 supercell of V_2CO_2 or $V_2C(OH)_2$ with a 6×6 supercell of graphene, see Fig. 4.16 as a representative example. In order to find out the ground state stacking type of M_2CX_2+Gr heterostructures, we calculated the binding energy of possible stacking configurations by shifting the M_2CX_2 layer over the unit cell of graphene on a uniform mesh. In the course of these simulations, each layer in the heterostructure is regarded rigid where only the interlayer distance is allowed to relax. The regarded binding energy per atom, E_b was calculated as follows:

$$E_b = \frac{1}{N} [E(M_2CX_2 + Gr) - E(M_2CX_2) - E(Gr)] \quad (4.5)$$

where $E(M_2CX_2+Gr)$, $E(M_2CX_2)$ and $E(Gr)$ are the total energies of M_2CX_2+Gr , mono- M_2CX_2 and Gr , respectively. N is the total number of atoms in the system. In [table 4.3](#), the calculated E_b and the interlayer distance for M_2CX_2+Gr are given, and they are system dependent. The results for graphene bilayer are also given as a reference. The interlayer binding energy and the distance of bilayer graphene are 20 meV/atom and 3.325 Å, respectively. Our calculations agree very well with a recent work in which quantum Monte Carlo simulations predicted a 17.8 meV/atom binding energy and 3.384 Å interlayer separation for bilayer graphene[\[224\]](#). The calculated binding energies (i.e. E_b) are negative for all the considered heterostructures, demonstrating the stability of each system against the phase separation. The magnitudes of the E_b for the ground state stacking in MXene oxides/graphene are comparable to that of bilayer graphene, whereas the MXene hydroxides/graphene are slightly more strongly bonded due to the extra hydrogen bonds. The differences in the binding energies among different MXenes that have the same functionalized group are negligible.

4.4.4 Single Li intercalation and its binding energy

Having the ground state stacking types of all the M_2CX_2+Gr heterostructures, we now investigate the Li intercalation in these systems. To uncover potential of M_2CX_2+Gr heterostructures in battery applications, we also considered Li intercalation on mono- M_2CX_2 , within bi- M_2CX_2 and within bi- Gr reference systems. These systems are considered with the same dimensions, or equivalently the same Li atoms concentration, as in the corresponding heterostructures.

Previous studies[\[225–227\]](#) have pointed out that the strongest binding for the intercalated Li atoms happens between bilayer heterostructure and reported a non-binding character of Li atoms on the surface of few-layer graphene, therefore, we limited our study to the intercalation between M_2CX_2 and graphene. In addition, inspired by the previous study[\[228\]](#) for the Li absorption site in M_2CX_2 multilayer system, we discovered that intercalated Li atom bind close to the M_2CX_2 layer and far from graphene, and it places itself between three O atoms. Therefore each formula unit of M_2CX_2 in a heterostructure can accommodate one Li atom. Additional Li atoms occupy the same positions in other unit cells, as shown in [Fig. 4.18](#). Note that, because of the resulting reflection symme-

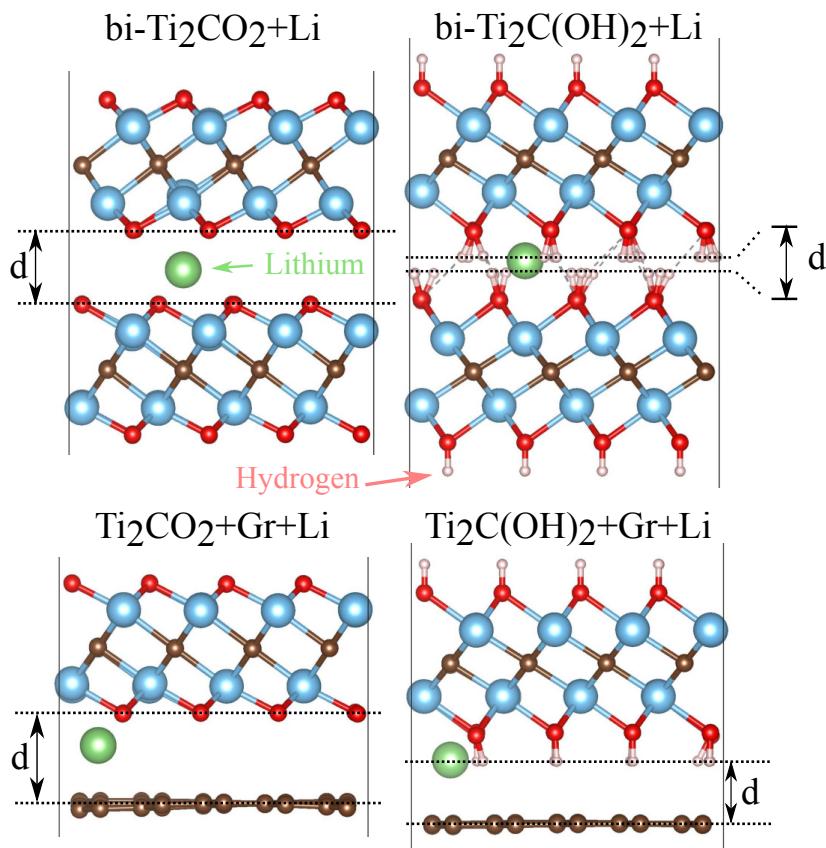


Fig. 4.17 The optimized locations of single Li atoms in different structures and the definition of interlayer distance d , which ignores the Li atom layer..

try for ground state stacking, the Li position only on one side of the symmetry line [110] is studied for a single Li absorption. Since a strong binding between Li and M_2CX_2+Gr bilayer is necessary to avoid the formation of metallic lithium, and therefore to improve the safety and reversibility of lithium-ion batteries, we need to make sure the reported Li binding energy is the largest one (that it is associated to the ground state adsorption site). Thus, we have calculated all the possible adsorption sites between two layers, here I only present the ground state configuration.

The binding energy, E_b^{Li} , for Li intercalated systems is defined through the following equation:

$$E_b^{Li} = \frac{1}{x}[E(\text{with } x\text{Li}) - E(\text{without Li}) - xE(\text{Li})], \quad (4.6)$$

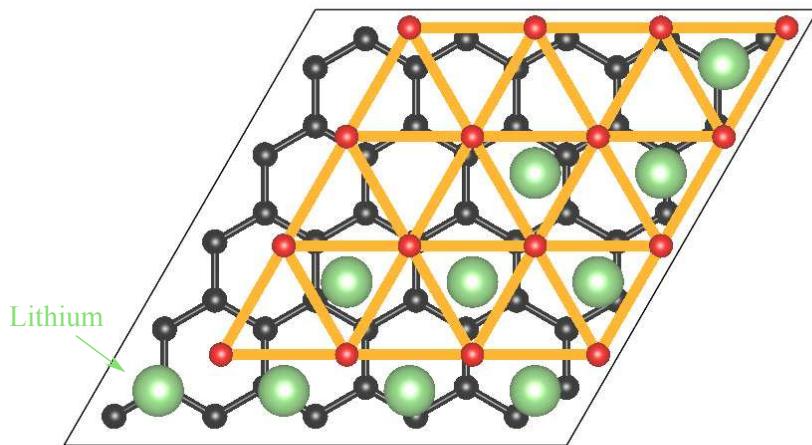


Fig. 4.18 The locations of Li atoms intercalation between $\text{Ti}_2\text{CO}_2+\text{Gr}$ heterostructure as an example.

where $E(\text{with } x\text{Li})$ and $E(\text{without Li})$ are the total energies of a system with and without x Li atoms, respectively. $E(\text{Li})$ is the total energy of a Li atom in its most stable bcc bulk structure. Here, a more negative binding energy indicates a more favourable exothermic binding of Li.

In [table 4.4](#), the results for different materials in three promising systems are shown. For comparison, we calculated Li intercalation in AA and AB stacked graphene bilayers. While the latter is more stable than the former for the pristine systems, the former is energetically more favourable for Li intercalation, consistent with previous calculations[229], see [table 4.4](#). The LiC_{64} (4×4 bilayer graphene) in AA configuration is energetically favoured to accommodate single Li between bilayer, while the Li atom will not bind at all in AB stack bilayer. However, the magnitude of the binding energy is generally small compared to the heterostructure due to the strong interaction of Li with M_2CO_2 layer.

The following findings are concluded from the results: (1) All systems related to Sc_2CO_2 experience severe structural distortion upon Li interactions. Two or three of the C atoms in the Sc_2CO_2 move towards each other and show a tendency to cluster. Therefore, this type of system is unstable for Li intercalation. (2) The binding of Li atom on mono- $\text{M}_2\text{C(OH)}_2$ is not favorable. This can be attributed to the Columbic repulsion between positively charged Li ions and H atoms. (3) As going from mono- to bi- $\text{M}_2\text{C(OH)}_2+\text{Li}$, Li adsorption is made stable again through the vdWs interaction that competes with foregoing repulsive inter-

action. (4) mono- M_2CO_2+Li , bi- M_2CX_2+Li and $M_2CX_2+Gr+Li$ exhibit the strongest adsorption for Li atoms. The calculated E_b^{Li} value at the largest binding energy site is -1.87 eV/atom for the mono- Ti_2CO_2 and -2.97 eV/atom for the mono- V_2CO_2 . In the case of $M_2CX_2+Gr+Li$, we observed that E_b^{Li} slightly decreases for $M=Ti$ and V and $X=O$. This may be correlated to the reduced vdW interaction with respect to the pristine bilayers due to the increase in interlayer separation. (5) We have identified three promising candidates with large Li atom adsorption energy, namely $Sc_2C(OH)_2+Gr+Li$, $Ti_2CO_2+Gr+Li$ and $V_2CO_2+Gr+Li$. Therefore, for the rest of the section, we will focus on these three systems and will study the kinetics of Li diffusion.

4.4.5 Effect of Li concentration

As a next step, we investigated the effect of the Li ion concentration on the physical properties of $M_2CX_2+Gr+Li$ heterostructures. Here, the concentration is defined as the ratio of the number of Li atoms and the number of formula units of M_2CX_2 in the heterostructures (e.g. 100% corresponds to one Li atom for each formula unit). Fig. 4.19(a) shows the variation of average E_b^{Li} as a function of concentration of the Li ions (i.e. x). As the number of intercalated Li increases, average E_b^{Li} decreases gradually. The reduction in binding energy is due to two main factors; One is the weak electrostatic attraction between M_2CX_2+Gr host and Li cations, and the other one is the enhanced Li-Li repulsion at high Li concentrations. The former is correlated with the reduction of charge transfer from the Li atom to M_2CX_2+Gr complex at high concentrations, as shown in Fig. 4.19(b). Similarly, the latter is due to the reduction of interatomic distances between positively charged Li ions. Above a critical concentration value, namely 80%, E_b^{Li} becomes positive for $Sc_2C(OH)_2+Gr+Li$, making this system energetically unstable for further Li insertion. E_b^{Li} is always negative for $Ti_2CO_2+Gr+Li$ and $V_2CO_2+Gr+Li$, suggesting that these heterostructures are stable against Li intercalation, and thus we can safely disregard the phase separation into individual monolayers and bulk Li at high concentrations. In other words, the $Ti_2CO_2+Gr+Li$ and $V_2CO_2+Gr+Li$ structures have high stability even with high Li concentration. For $V_2CO_2+Gr+Li$ ($Ti_2CO_2+Gr+Li$), E_b^{Li} may vary by about 1 (0.5) eV as a function of Li concentration. Recently, Sun *et al.* Sun et al. [230] reported that V_2CO_2 un-

Table 4.4 A comparison of different MXenes systems: monolayer, bilayer, heterostructure with Li intercalation. d is the interlayer distance and is defined as shown in Fig. 4.17. E_b^{Li} is the binding energy of a single Li atom. Only the largest binding energy of Li atom is reported, i.e. ground state adsorption site. L_{min} is the shortest bond length of a Li atom with others. e is the charge transfer from a Li atom to a heterostructure. For the consistency of the Li concentrations, all monolayer and bilayer system use the same dimensions as in the corresponding heterostructures. Three different size of bi-Gr are presented to compare with the hereostructures with corresponding size of Gr.

Material	Structure	d Å	E_b^{Li} eV/atom	L_{min} Å	Li charge transfer e
graphene	4×4 bi-Gr (AB)+Li	3.591	0.030	2.060	0.873
	4×4 bi-Gr (AA)+Li	3.616	-0.232	2.344	0.868
	5×5 bi-Gr (AA)+Li	3.617	-0.283	2.344	0.878
	6×6 bi-Gr (AA)+Li	3.636	-0.336	2.352	0.879
Sc ₂ CO ₂ (unstable)	mono-Sc ₂ CO ₂ +Li	-	-9.986	2.024	0.898
	bi-Sc ₂ CO ₂ +Li	1.791	-32.646	2.208	0.902
	Sc ₂ CO ₂ +Gr+Li	2.874	-19.885	1.958	0.887
Sc ₂ C(OH) ₂	mono-Sc ₂ C(OH) ₂ +Li	-	0.048	1.918	0.869
	bi-Sc ₂ C(OH) ₂ +Li	0.548	-0.309	2.050	0.885
	Sc ₂ C(OH) ₂ +Gr+Li	2.278	-0.941	1.953	0.877
Ti ₂ CO ₂	mono-Ti ₂ CO ₂ +Li	-	-1.870	1.994	0.912
	bi-Ti ₂ CO ₂ +Li	2.480	-2.308	2.047	0.886
	Ti ₂ CO ₂ +Gr+Li	2.976	-1.729	1.993	0.887
Ti ₂ C(OH) ₂	mono-Ti ₂ C(OH) ₂ +Li	-	0.146	1.926	0.792
	bi-Ti ₂ C(OH) ₂ +Li	0.599	-0.431	2.004	0.879
	Ti ₂ C(OH) ₂ +Gr+Li	2.090	-0.229	1.941	0.875
V ₂ CO ₂	mono-V ₂ CO ₂ +Li	-	-2.791	1.975	0.921
	bi-V ₂ CO ₂ +Li	2.500	-3.573	2.009	0.887
	V ₂ CO ₂ +Gr+Li	2.779	-2.537	1.957	0.891
V ₂ C(OH) ₂	mono-V ₂ C(OH) ₂ +Li	-	-0.175	1.878	0.860
	bi-V ₂ C(OH) ₂ +Li	0.395	-1.336	1.995	0.878
	V ₂ C(OH) ₂ +Gr+Li	2.080	-0.304	1.912	0.878

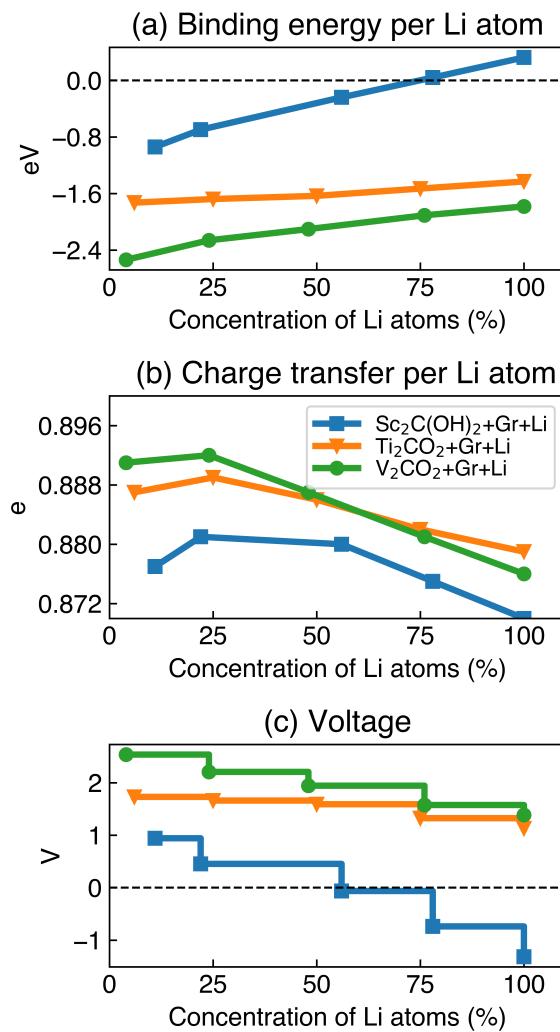


Fig. 4.19 The average binding energy (a) and the average charge transfer (b) of Li atoms and the voltage profile of $\text{M}_2\text{CX}_2+\text{Gr}$ heterostructure (c) as a function of Li concentration.

dergoes a reversible structural transformation during the adsorption of Li. We also checked the possibility of such structural transformation for V_2CO_2+Gr bi-layer and we found that the presence of graphene prevents the transformation of V_2CO_2 . Our results clearly demonstrate that $Ti_2CO_2+Gr+Li$ and $V_2CO_2+Gr+Li$ can be utilized as an anode material for high capacity Li ion batteries.

Another important point is how the structural stability of $Ti_2CO_2+Gr+Li$ and $V_2CO_2+Gr+Li$ is affected as the Li ions coverage is increased. We found that an increase in the number of Li ions leads to a small expansion in in-plane lattice constants. For instance, the in-plane lattice constant of both $V_2CO_2+Gr+Li$ and $Ti_2CO_2+Gr+Li$ expands less than 1%. Besides, we did not observe severe lengthening of the surface Ti/V-O bonds and shortening of Li-O bonds for both $Ti_2CO_2+Gr+Li$ and $V_2CO_2+Gr+Li$ heterostructures. For instance, Li-O bond length decreases at most 3% with increasing Li concentration. It is also found that Li intercalation slightly enlarges and later reduces the interlayer separation as Li concentration increased. The calculated interlayer separations suggested that we can have at most 0.5 Å expansion as a result of Li intercalation. These results clearly suggest that we can have a reversible reaction that is requested for rechargeable ion batteries. Thus, the layered M_2CX_2+Gr heterostructures can effectively defy the volume expansion problem faced by the electrode materials. However, $Sc_2C(OH)_2+Gr$ is unstable against Li loading to higher concentration.

4.4.6 Electrochemical properties

In order to gain insight into the electrochemical properties of the Li intercalation process into M_2CX_2+Gr heterostructure, the open-circuit-voltage was obtained by calculating the averaged half cell voltage over a range of metal ion concentrations x , where $x_1 \leq x \leq x_2$, using,

$$V \approx \frac{E_{M_2CX_2+Gr+x_1Li} - E_{M_2CX_2+Gr+x_2Li} + (x_2 - x_1)E_{Li}}{(x_2 - x_1)e} \quad (4.7)$$

where $E_{M_2CX_2+Gr+Li_{x_1}}$ and $E_{M_2CX_2+Gr+Li_{x_2}}$ are the total energies of M_2CX_2+Gr heterostructure with x_1 and x_2 Li intercalated, respectively. E_{Li} is the total energy of bulk bcc Li. First of all, our calculations showed that the charging voltage for Li intercalation decreases with increase of Li atoms, as clearly seen in

[Fig. 4.19\(c\)](#). The calculated average voltage corresponding to $\text{Sc}_2\text{C}(\text{OH})_2+\text{Gr+Li}$ is negative for a Li ion concentration x larger than 55%. As mentioned above, a phase transition should be expected for the concentrations larger than this critical value. Our results are consistent with a recent work reporting that H and/or OH should be avoided if possible since they result in a lower capacity and negative cell voltage[[231](#), [232](#)]. On the other hand, the available intercalation sites in $\text{Ti}_2\text{CO}_2+\text{Gr+Li}$ and $\text{V}_2\text{CO}_2+\text{Gr+Li}$ composites can be fully occupied. As we increase the Li concentration from $x=50\%$ to 100%, the open-circuit voltage decreases from 1.59 (1.94) V to 1.13 (1.38) V for $\text{Ti}_2\text{CO}_2+\text{Gr+Li}$ ($\text{V}_2\text{CO}_2+\text{Gr+Li}$). The binding energy change (i.e E_b^{Li}) during Li intercalation can be correlated with the voltage value. Since $\text{V}_2\text{CO}_2+\text{Gr+Li}$ has the largest Li binding energy, the calculated voltage value is also the largest. The calculated average voltage profile is 1.49 V for $\text{Ti}_2\text{CO}_2+\text{Gr+Li}$ and 1.93 V for $\text{V}_2\text{CO}_2+\text{Gr+Li}$, which is higher than those of Mo_2C [[214](#)], graphite[[233](#)] and TiO_2 electrode [[234](#)] and lower than phosphorene[[235](#)]. Experimentally measured maximum voltages for pure V_2CO_2 and Ti_2CO_2 anodes are 3.0 V and 2.5 V, respectively[[211](#), [236](#)]. Combining graphene with V_2CO_2 or Ti_2CO_2 reduces maximum voltages by around 0.5 V. Approximately 50% of capacity of $\text{V}_2\text{CO}_2+\text{Gr+Li}$ ($\text{Ti}_2\text{CO}_2+\text{Gr+Li}$) is intercalated above 2 (1.6) V, with the rest intercalating at lower voltages. Our results clearly demonstrate that $\text{Ti}_2\text{CO}_2+\text{Gr+Li}$ can be exploited in low voltage applications and $\text{V}_2\text{CO}_2+\text{Gr+Li}$ are suitable for high charging voltage applications.

4.4.7 Diffusion properties

A low diffusion barrier and high mobility are the requirements of an efficient electrode material. In particular, the mobility of a metal atom on an electrode material is a key factor determining the rate performance during charging and discharging of a battery. Following the thermodynamic consideration of Li intercalation, we investigated the single Li kinetics on mono-M+Li, within bi-M+Li and within M+Gr+Li heterostructures, where here M=($\text{Sc}_2\text{C}(\text{OH})_2, \text{Ti}_2\text{CO}_2, \text{V}_2\text{CO}_2$), by calculating the lowest energy Li atom diffusion path connecting two adjacent binding sites using the cNEB method, see [Fig. 4.21](#). The determined energy profiles of the paths are shown in [Fig. 4.22](#). Compared to the bilayer systems, Li displays relatively smaller diffusion barriers on the pristine monolayers. In

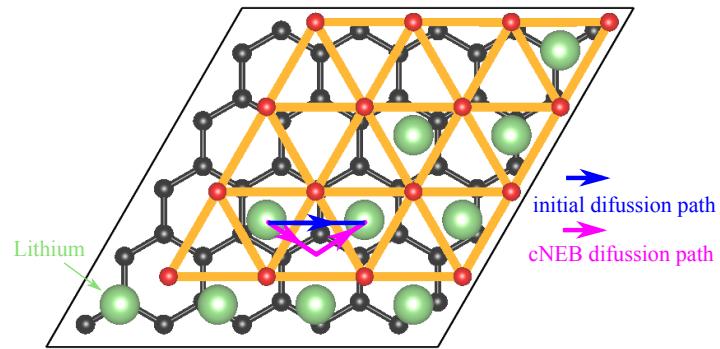


Fig. 4.20 Initially guessed and final resulting Lithium diffusion paths between $\text{Ti}_2\text{CO}_2+\text{G}$ heterostructure.

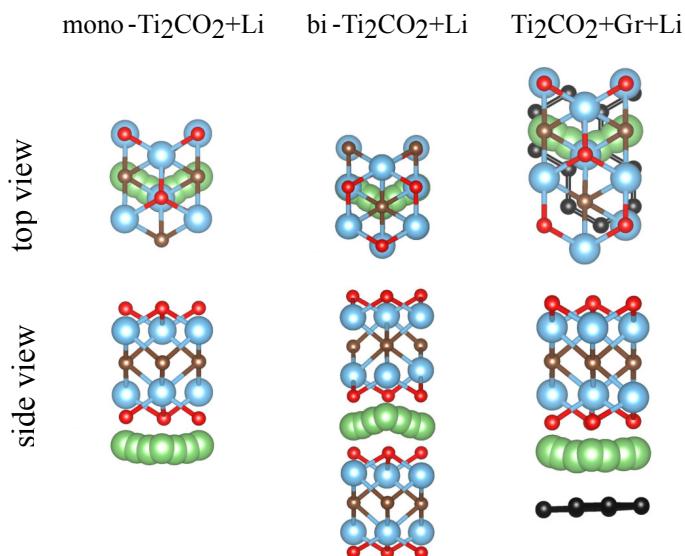


Fig. 4.21 The top view and the side view of Li diffusion paths along the lowest energy diffusion paths in Ti_2CO_2 related systems as examples.

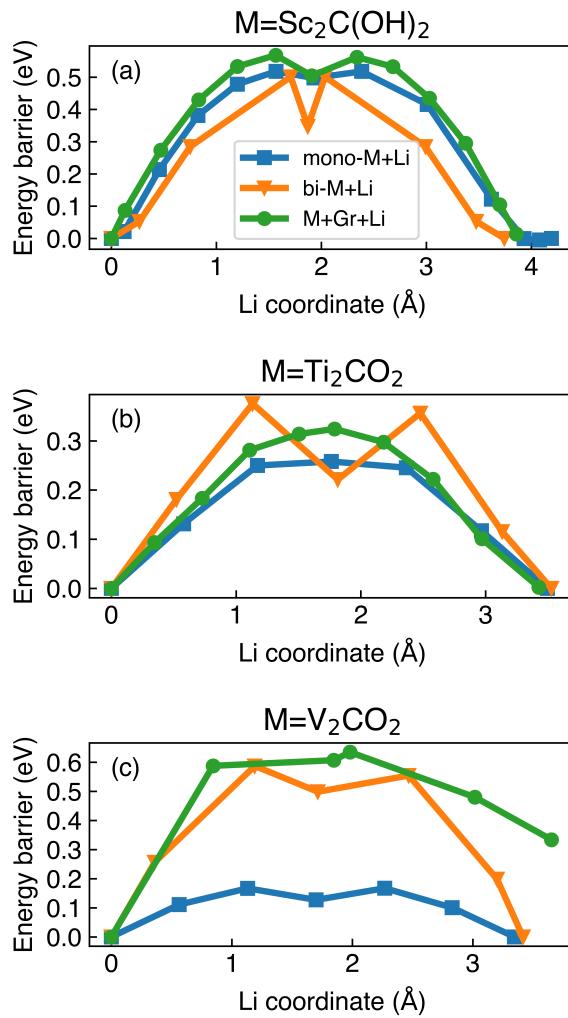


Fig. 4.22 Energy profiles of the Li diffusions in different systems composed of (a) $\text{Sc}_2\text{C}(\text{OH})_2$, (b) Ti_2CO_2 and (c) V_2CO_2 along the lowest energy diffusion paths as indicated in Fig. 4.21.

other words, energy barriers of Li ions in $M_2CX_2+Gr+Li$ heterostructure are always higher than those of monolayers. For instance, while energy barriers is calculated as 0.16 eV on the mono- V_2CO_2+Li , it is 0.6 eV for bi- V_2CO_2+Li and $V_2CO_2+Gr+Li$ heterorestructure. Since the multilayer system has the advantage of having higher capacity than the single monolayer system in a given volume, and also the synthesized M_2CX_2+Gr will mostly be multilayered, we believe that the monolayer structures represent the lower limit for energy barriers. However, to obtain realistic kinetic properties we should consider diffusion of ions between layers, not only on isolated monolayers. Another important point is that surface functionalization increases the barrier remarkably[237]. Interestingly, energy barriers for Ti based systems are similar, varying in the range of 0.22-032 eV. Our calculated energy barriers for mono- Ti_2CO_2+Li are consistent with a recent work[237]. Energy barriers for Ti-based systems are lower than that of graphite (0.5 eV)[238] and high-capacity bulk silicon anode materials with a diffusion barrier around 0.57 eV, comparable to the commercially used anode materials based on TiO_2 with a barrier of 0.35-0.65 eV[239-241], suggesting that heterostructures of Ti-based MXenes with graphene are promising candidates for electrode materials in battery applications. The diffusion barriers can be reduced by weakening the interaction of Li ions with the constituent layers. This can be achieved by fabricated pillar structures in which the interlayer distance of graphene and MXenes is enlarged by the help of intercalated molecules [242]. This method can also improve the storage capacity by multilayer absorption between the layers.

4.4.8 Summary

We carried out first-principles calculations to systematically investigate the Li atoms intercalation in MXenes/graphene vertical bilayer heterostructure for Li battery application. Six members in Mxenes family were chosen to form heterostructures with graphene: M_2CX_2+Gr (where $M=Sc, Ti, V$ and $X=OH, O$). The ground state stacking types of bilayer and the strongest binding sites of Li atoms were determined first. The strength of the binding of bilayer heterostructure is comparable to that of bilayer graphene, and it is stronger than MXene bilayers. Due to a finite mismatch of the lattice constant of MXenes and graphene, the rel-

ative motion of a bilayer in a heterostructure requires less energy as compared to the other two cases and giving lower fiction between them. We identified two promising heterostructures for Li intercalation: Ti_2CO_2+Gr and V_2CO_2+Gr . The stability of the heterostructure upon Li intercalation is confirmed through 1) small variations of the structural parameters , e.g. in-plane lattice parameters (<1%) and interlayer separation (<0.5 Å); 2) Large negative binding energies of Li atoms, e.g. larger than that in bilayer graphene; 3) Li atoms donating a significant amount of charge to the host materials and existing in the cationic state. We found that all possible Li absorption sites can be occupied without destroying the stability, namely 100% Li intercalation, leading to an average open circuit voltage of 1.49 V for Ti_2CO_2+Gr and 1.93 V for V_2CO_2+Gr . Especially, Ti_2CO_2 MXene offers a compromise between the capacity and kinetics since the calculated diffusion barriers are the lowest among other systems studied and lower than graphene. It is suggested from the study that a balance between the storage capacity and kinetics for practical applications should be made when selecting a promising candidate. Due to their lower molecular weights as compared to bare MXenes bilayers, MXene+Gr heterostructures offer higher storage density. They also have the advantage of their good electrical conductivity which is an essential property for the proper operation of a battery.

Chapter 5

Results of Physical Properties Modification in Novel 2D materials

This is the second part of the results of this thesis. Here we will discuss some of the possible ways to modify the physical properties of 2D materials. As before, each section will be focused on an unique way to change the properties of materials, namely number of layers, mechanical strain, heterostructure and defect induction. Following the theme of the thesis, which is about novel 2D materials, we will continue to introduce other new 2D materials that have been discovered and whose properties will be modified.

5.1 Number of layers: Few-layer of Calcium hydroxide¹

5.1.1 Introduction

We have seen several monolayer systems that were extracted from layered materials such as 2D-BN, 2D-MoS₂. In this section, we further explore this process for alkaline earth metal hydroxides (AEMHs), which pose a layered structure in the bulk form and are exfoliated to few-layer form. The experimental synthesis and the theoretical modelling is reported in this section. In contrast to the abundant literature on graphene-like ultra-thin structures, few-layer AEMHs have not

¹This work is published: [P2](#).

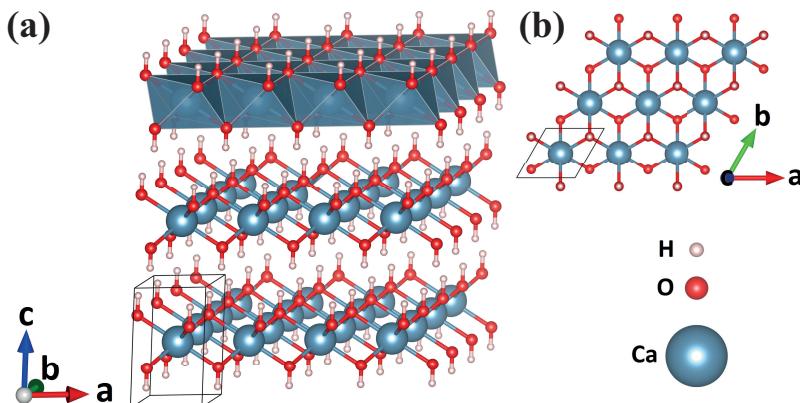


Fig. 5.1 Atomic structure of bulk $\text{Ca}(\text{OH})_2$: (a) tilted view, (b) top view of one layer.

been investigated so far. Bulk forms of AEMHs are layered structures belonging to the $P\bar{3}m1$ space group[243] and the crystal structure of layered AEMHs comprise stacked sheets of MO_6 (M =alkaline earth metals) edge-sharing octahedra, see Fig. 5.1. At each corner of an octahedron, each O atom binds to one H atom and the latter interacts with three neighbouring hydroxyl groups of the adjacent layer. Early studies on bulk AEMHs revealed that the application of temperature and pressure may result in dramatical changes in their crystal structure and electronic properties[244–251]. Moreover, early theoretical studies showed the reliability of the use of first-principles calculations with a plane-waves basis set in combination with the GGA exchange-correlation functional for the investigation of structural and electronic properties of these materials[252–255].

Although the structural and electronic properties of bulk AEMHs have been investigated before [254, 256, 257], single layers of these materials have never been studied before and their stability is still an open question. However, advances in experimental techniques made exfoliation and growth of such structures possible[258, 259]. Especially the Portlandite material, $\text{Ca}(\text{OH})_2$, which has been the main product of hydration of Portland cement, CaO , is one of the most well-known AEHMs. Characteristic properties of ultra-thin structures of Portlandite have not been reported yet. In this study we investigate, both experimentally and theoretically, the structural, electronic, magnetic, vibrational and mechanical characteristics of bulk, bilayer and monolayer $\text{Ca}(\text{OH})_2$ and discuss how these properties change with the number of layers. Particularly, the result

of the phonon calculations is presented for the confirmation of the stability of the newly proposed 2D material.

To assess the mechanical strength of the material, in addition to the elastic moduli that we have introduced in [chapter 3](#), here we calculate another useful parameter that is closely related to the Young's modulus, which is called the in-plane stiffness of the materials. We focused on the harmonic range of the elastic deformation, where the structure responded linearly to strain ϵ . The stretching of the $\text{Ca}(\text{OH})_2$ is achieved by increasing the equilibrium lattice constant a_0 by Δa , to attain the axial strain $\epsilon = \Delta a/a_0$. We optimized the atomic structure at each increment of the strain, $\Delta\epsilon = 0.01$ and calculated the total energy under strain $E_T(\epsilon)$. Then the strain energy can be given by, $E_S = E_T(\epsilon) - E_T(\epsilon=0)$; namely, the total energy at a given strain ϵ minus the total energy at zero strain. Then, using the following formula, one can calculate the in-plane stiffness:

$$C = \left(\frac{1}{A_0} \right) \left(\frac{d^2 E_S}{d\epsilon^2} \right), \quad (5.1)$$

where A_0 is the equilibrium area of the supercell.

As explained in detail in the following sections, unit cells including one Ca, two O, and two H form the primitive cells of both monolayer and bulk structures, while it is doubled for a bilayer. The cohesive energy per unit cell, E_{coh} is presented in [table 5.2](#) and is calculated according to the formula: $E_{coh} = E_{tot} - nE_{Ca} - 2nE_O - 2nE_H$, where E_{tot} is the total energy of the unit cell of $\text{Ca}(\text{OH})_2$, E_X is the single atom total energy of atom X and n is the number of Ca atoms for the corresponding unit cell, i.e. $n = 1$, $n = 2$ and $n = 1$ for monolayer, bilayer and bulk, respectively.

5.1.2 Computational details

Simulation program: VASP and PHON[[260](#)]

Energy cut-off: 500 eV

Pseudopotentials: PBE-GGA(PAW)

k points (Monkhorst-Pack): $35 \times 35 \times 1$ and $25 \times 25 \times 11$ for few-layer and bulk $\text{Ca}(\text{OH})_2$, respectively

Vacuum: 25 Å

Energy and force convergence criterion: 10^{-5} eV and 10^{-2} eV/Å, respectively

vdW corrections: DFT-D2 method of Grimme [[261](#)]

Charge analysis: Bader's charge analysis method[218–220]

5.1.3 Experimental measurements

Before our theoretical investigation of few-layer Ca(OH)₂, we present the experimental realization and detailed theoretical analysis of the characteristics of bulk Ca(OH)₂ crystals.

Ca(OH)₂ crystals were grown using the hydrolysis technique by using Ca₃SiO₅ micro-pallets. Ca₃SiO₅ was mixed at different water to solid ratios ranging from 0.2 to 0.9 by molar weight. The mixture was heated up to 40 °C in a controlled reaction chamber for 3 hours and controllably cooled down to 5 °C for 24 hours using a temperature controller. The growth time depends on the total water to solid ratio as well as the growth temperature. Growth time was around 8 hours for 0.6 water to solid ratio and 40 °C growth temperature. Longer growth time typically resulted in a dendritic morphology where the growth was mostly in the c-axis direction. Synthesized crystals displayed rather sharp (FWHM = 7 cm⁻¹) Raman feature at 280 cm⁻¹ and our XRD measurements displayed sharp (00l) reflections at 19.1, 39, 56.2, 77.7 degrees implying that crystals have lamellar nature.

Synthesized crystals were around 0.1-2 mm in size and they were filtered from the solution. After the filtering process, crystallites were washed off using 18.2 MΩ.cm DI wafer multiple times and dried under inert Ar gas. Crystallites were exfoliated using micro-mechanical exfoliation technique onto thermal silicon oxide / Si substrates. We find that the contrast was improved for an oxide thickness around 265-285 nm. Exfoliated flakes displayed rather sharp edges (see Fig. 5.2) with well-defined angles of 120° and 60° implying that the materials are highly crystalline. Interestingly, synthesized Ca(OH)₂ flakes are layered in agreement with theoretical calculations and these flakes can be easily exfoliated using the Scotch tape technique on different substrates. The exfoliated flakes do not show any signs of structural imperfection, pit formation, and overall rather flat surfaces can be obtained. In Fig. 5.2, the yellowish looking regions actually correspond to regions where the thickness is around 50-100 nm (50-100 layers) while the blue features are only 10-50 nm in thickness. Considering the ease to

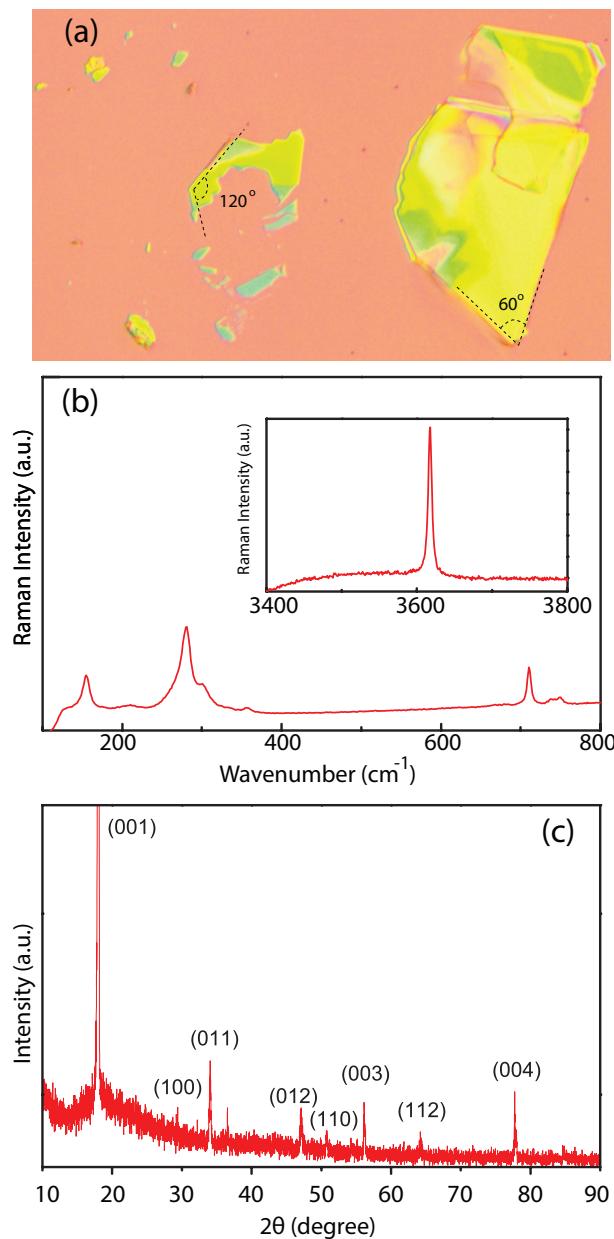


Fig. 5.2 (a) Optical image of the crystal structure and (b) Raman spectrum measured using 488 nm laser in the low and the high frequency region. The fundamental phonon branches located at the low frequency ($100\text{-}400 \text{ cm}^{-1}$ range) and the high frequency (3620 cm^{-1}) are associated with the OH stretching mode. (c) XRD measurements

exfoliate this material, experimentally and theoretically we predict that they can be eventually isolated down to mono- and few-layers on various substrates.

In addition, micro-Raman measurements were performed using a 488 nm laser on a 2 micron square spot using a high intensity laser of 10 mW. We noticed that few-layers of Ca(OH)₂ were not subject to local over-heating / decomposition effects unlike TMDs (MoS₂, WS₂, etc.) which typically decompose around 100 microWatt power using a similar laser excitation spot. We attribute this to the low absorption of the material associated with the rather large band gap. Raman measurements displayed various peaks in the 100-1000 cm⁻¹ range. The high frequency peak at 3620 cm⁻¹ is associated with the O-H stretching mode A_{1g} . In addition, the low frequency $E_u(T)$ mode is found at 280 cm⁻¹.

Here, we note that even though this material is a direct gap semiconductor, their band gap is well beyond our detectors range and since the insulators cannot be excited with such high laser wavelength, PL measurements are virtually impossible.

5.1.4 Structure properties

The bulk structure of Portlandite is formed by the stacking of individual Ca(OH)₂ monolayers on top of each other, see Fig. 5.1. As we will examine and discuss the stacking in detail in the following paragraphs, we learned that the AA stacking is the ground state atomic configuration for bulk and multilayer structures of Ca(OH)₂. In table 5.1, optimized lattice parameters of the bulk structure together with experiments and other theoretical calculation are presented. Our results are consistent with reference [256] and together they have good agreement with experiments. This justifies the reliability of our calculations.

In the 5-atomic hexagonal primitive unit cell of bulk Ca(OH)₂, the Ca atom sits at the geometrical center of the cell, i.e. {1/2a, 1/2b, 1/2c}. Two O and two H atoms form two hydroxyl groups (-OH⁻) located symmetrically with respect to the Ca atom. In this arrangement, coordinates of H and O only differ by their positions along the **c** lattice axis and their fractional coordinates can be given as {1/6a, 1/6b, (1/2c - c_O)} and {1/6a, 1/6b, (1/2c - c_H)} for one hydroxyl, {5/6a, 5/6b, (1/2c + c_O)} and {5/6a, 5/6b, (1/2c + c_H)} for the other

Table 5.1 Comparison of calculated results for structures parameter of bulk $\text{Ca}(\text{OH})_2$ with experimental results and with theoretical results from other reference: lattice constants a and c , volume V and c/a ratio.

Structure parameters	Exp. ^a	Exp. ^b	PBE-PAW (this work)	PBE-PAW ^c
a (\AA)	3.589	3.592	3.614	3.612
c (\AA)	4.911	4.906	4.982	4.942
V (\AA^3)	54.78	54.82	56.35	55.85
c/a	1.368	1.366	1.379	1.368

^a Ref. [262]

^b Ref. [263]

^c Ref. [256]

one, where c_O and c_H are the vertical shifts of the positions of O and H atoms from the Ca plane in units of \AA , respectively.

In the optimized structure, the lattice constants a and c are 3.61 \AA and 4.98 \AA in the bulk structure and the parameters c_O and c_H are calculated to be 1.15 \AA and 2.12 \AA . The bond lengths of Ca-O and O-H are 2.36 \AA and 0.97 \AA . The interlayer distance which is defined as the distance between the uppermost H layer of the underlying layer and the lowermost H layer of the top-lying layer is found to be 0.49 \AA . Differing from other lamellar bulk crystal structures such as graphite (3.58 \AA) and MoS_2 (3.42 \AA)[264], $\text{Ca}(\text{OH})_2$ layers are more closely stacked on top of each other.

Our calculations revealed that going from bulk to monolayer the in-plane lattice parameter a changes to 3.62 \AA . In our calculations, the c lattice parameter in the hexagonal unit cell of the monolayer is set to 25 \AA in order to avoid interlayer interaction between the adjacent layers. In the monolayer $\text{Ca}(\text{OH})_2$, parameters c_O and c_H are calculated to be $c_O=1.14 \text{\AA}$ and $c_H=2.10 \text{\AA}$, respectively. Ca-O and O-H bond distances are 2.38 \AA and 0.97 \AA in the monolayer, respectively. We observed only a small change as the system goes from bulk to monolayer, and some of the structure parameters are even left unchanged. From this we can conclude there is quite weak interlayer interaction in $\text{Ca}(\text{OH})_2$. In order to study the interlayer interaction we further investigate its effect on stacking, and by including the vdW correction in the functional we are able to identify the nature of this interaction.

Table 5.2 Calculated results for different structures of Ca(OH)_2 : lattice constants a , vertical shift of O and H atom c_O c_H , Ca-O and O-H bond length, energy band gap E_{gap} , cohesive energy per atom E_{coh} , charge transfer from Ca atom to O atom ΔQ , in-plane Young's modulus E_{xx} , E_{yy} , in-plane Poisson's ratio ν_{xy} , in-plane shear modulus G_{xy} and in-plane stiffness C . For comparison, theoretical calculation on same quantities of BN are shown in the last row.

System	a (Å)	c_O/c_H (Å/Å)	Ca-O/O-H (Å/Å)	E_{gap} (eV)	E_{coh} (eV)	ΔQ (e)	E_{xx}, E_{yy} (N/m)	ν_{xy}	G_{xy} (N/m)	C (J/m ²)
Bulk Ca(OH)_2	3.61	1.15/2.12	2.36/0.97	4.08	4.52	1.6	55.0	0.30	21.23	60.1
2L Ca(OH)_2	3.62	1.15/2.12	2.38/0.97	3.70	4.48	1.6	50.7	0.32	19.16	55.6
1L Ca(OH)_2	3.62	1.14/2.11	2.38/0.97	3.67	4.39	1.6	50.7	0.33	19.08	53.2
1L BN	2.51 ^a	-	1.45 ^{a,b}	4.64 ^a	8.82 ^a	0.43 ^{a,c}	278.2 ^d	0.22 ^d	113.5 ^d	267 ^e

^a Ref. [265]

^b B-N bond length

^c charge transfer from B to N

^d Ref. [266]

^e Ref. [267]

Individual layers of layered structures such as graphite, hex-BN and TMDs are held together mainly by the vdW force in order to form a bulk layered structure. Such a weak interaction stems from dynamical correlations between fluctuating charge distributions in neighboring layers. Here we investigated the energies of various bilayer configurations. As presented in Fig. 5.3 there are six possible types of stacking between two Ca(OH)_2 monolayers. Similar to the stacking nomenclature of bilayer graphene, we classify the stacking types to be either AA or AB_n ($n=1,2,\dots,5$). The same type of atoms from different monolayers are on top of each other in AA stacking whereas AB stackings can be reached by shifting one of the layers along certain lattice vectors directions. One set of AB stackings could be realized by shifting the second layer in the AA stacking towards $[\bar{1}\bar{1}0]$, which gives stacking AB1, and by shifting towards the $[1\bar{1}0]$ direction, which gives stacking AB2, see first row in Fig. 5.3. Another set of bilayers is achieved by first flipping the second layer upside down in AA stacking, which gives stacking AB3, then AB4 and AB5 can be constructed by doing the same shifting on the second layer of AB3 towards $[\bar{1}\bar{1}0]$ and $[1\bar{1}0]$ directions of the 1st layer, respectively. After relaxation of all stackings, the variation of the a lattice constant among the different stacking types is less than 0.01 Å. The smallest interlayer distance, as defined previously for bulk, is for AA stacking and equals 0.49 Å, i.e. the same as in bulk. For AB stacking the interlayer distance is 1~2 Å larger than that for AA

stacking. As depicted in Fig. 5.3, AA stacking is 96~137 meV per formula more favorable than all other possible stacking types and hence it corresponds to the lowest energy configuration.

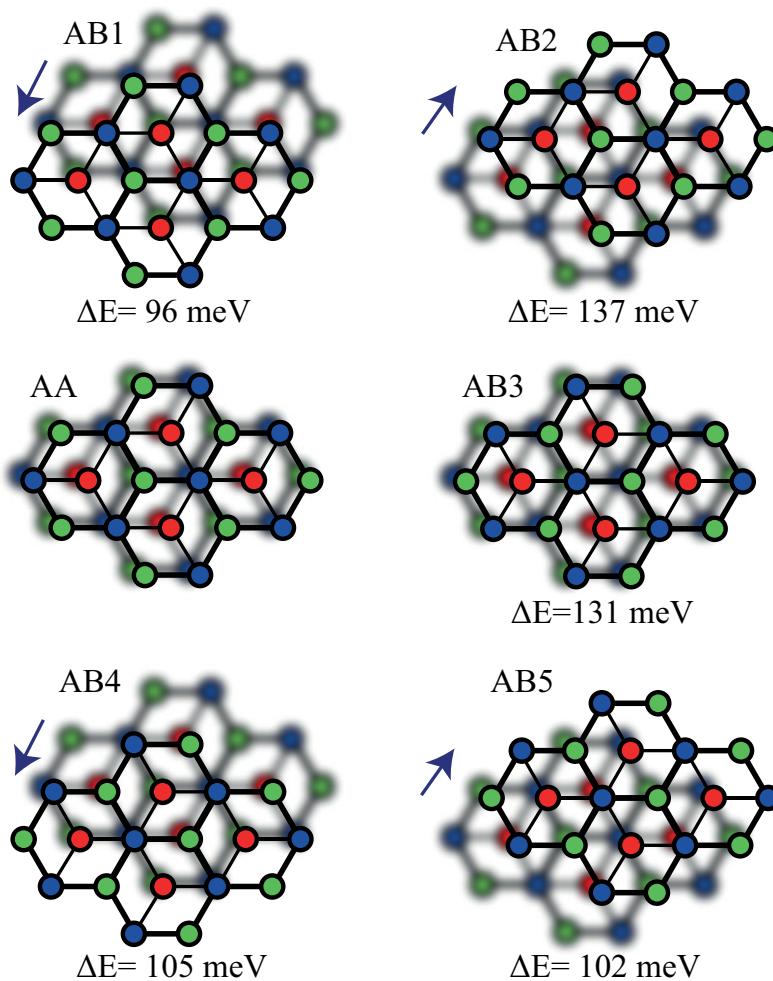


Fig. 5.3 Different stacked bilayers (bottom layer is blurred) and their energy difference with respect to the AA stacking of $\text{Ca}(\text{OH})_2$, i.e. $\Delta E = E_{\text{ABX}} - E_{\text{AA}}$, ($X=1, 2, \dots, 5$). Energies are given per formula of $\text{Ca}(\text{OH})_2$. Blue, green and red circles are for Ca atom, upper hydroxyl group and lower hydroxyl group, respectively. For clarity, the bottom layer is shifted slightly.

To investigate the nature of the interlayer interaction, we have calculated the interlayer interaction energy (IE) for the AA stacked bilayer structure of $\text{Ca}(\text{OH})_2$. The IE is the energy difference between the total energy at a specific interlayer

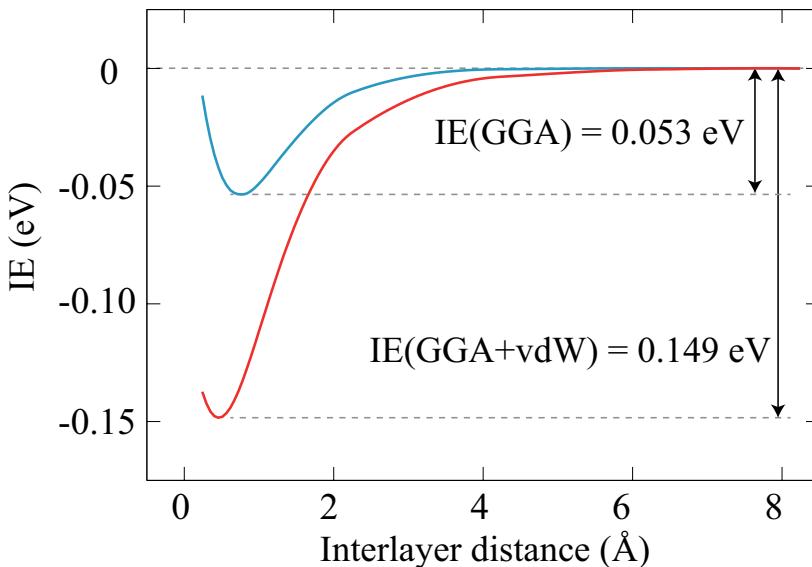


Fig. 5.4 Interlayer interaction energy per formula of AA-stacked bilayer $\text{Ca}(\text{OH})_2$. Blue and red curves are for GGA calculations without and with vdW correction, respectively.

distance and that of a well separated bilayer. The plot of IE versus interlayer distance is shown in Fig. 5.4, where the energy of the well separated bilayer is defined as 0 eV. Two sets of calculations were performed: one set only considers GGA exchange correlation; while another set considers both the GGA and vdW interaction. At the optimized interlayer distance for the bilayer structure, almost 2/3 of the attractive interaction comes from the vdWs interaction, which is consist with D'Arco et al. [255] . They stated that interlayer interaction of Brucite, one of the isomorphous of Portlandite, is mainly a dispersion-type interaction. The nature of interlayer interaction in $\text{Ca}(\text{OH})_2$ is mainly vdW type weak interaction. Our GGA+vdW calculations revealed that the interlayer interaction between two layers of $\text{Ca}(\text{OH})_2$ (149 meV per formula) is much stronger than that of bilayers of MoS_2 (76 meV per formula).

5.1.5 Electronic properties

Our Bader charge transfer analysis showed that the final (initial) electron charge on Ca, O and H atoms after (before) the formation of the crystal are 6.4e (8.0e), 7.4e (6.0e) and 0.4e (1.0e), respectively. Therefore, in the bulk structure of

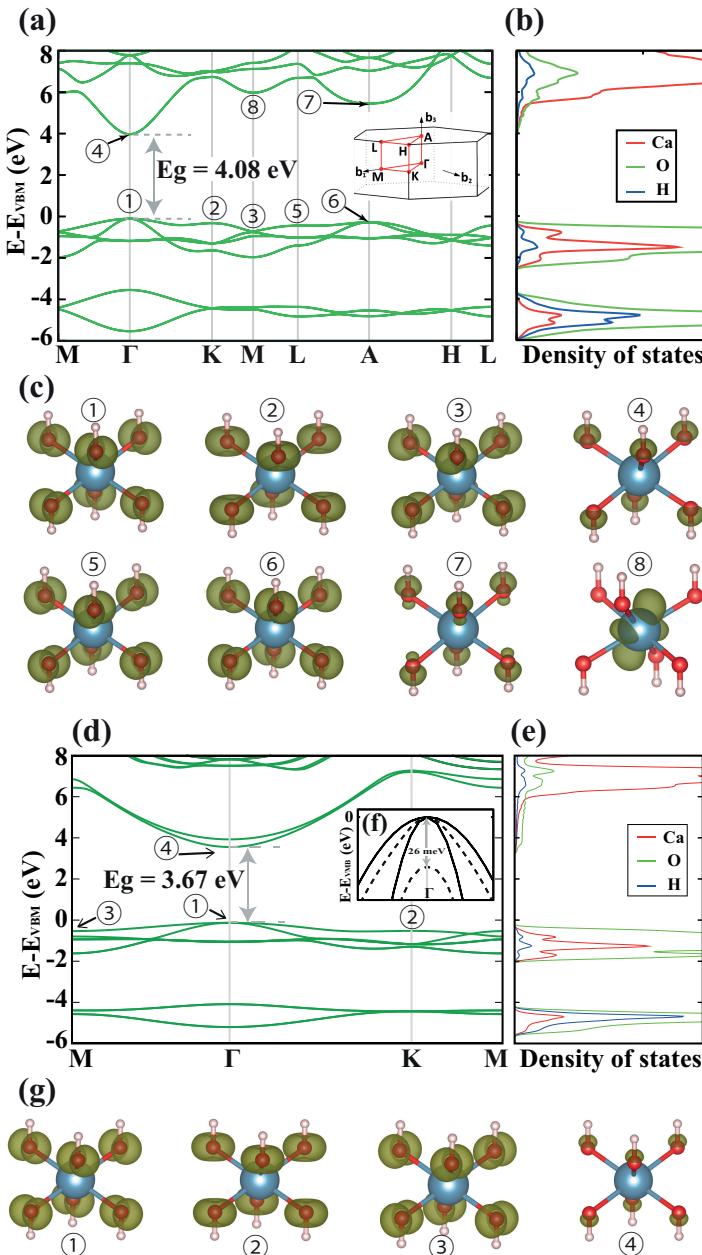


Fig. 5.5 (a) and (d) are the Band structures, (b) and (e) are the partial DOS and (c) and (g) are the band and k -point decomposed charge densities of the bulk (c) and monolayer (g) $\text{Ca}(\text{OH})_2$, respectively. The charge density are the band edges indicated in (a) and (d), isovalue are kept constant. (f) Band structure around Γ point is shown with (dashed line) and without (solid line) spin orbit coupling.

Ca(OH)_2 , Ca-O bonds, which are mostly in ionic character, are formed through 0.8e charge transfer from each Ca to O atom. The charge transfer is kept unchanged when it comes to the monolayer structure, except that the rest charge on H atoms is 0.6e in monolayers.

Our calculations on the electronic structure reveal that bulk Ca(OH)_2 is an insulator with a 4.37 eV direct band gap. As shown in Fig. 5.5(a), the VBM and the CBM are located at the Γ point. The partial density of states (DOS) shown in Fig. 5.1(b) indicates that the major contribution to the states at the valence and conduction band edge originate from the O atoms, while deeper in the conduction band, states are mainly composed of the orbitals of Ca. The orbital character of a state at a particular band can also be deduced from a band and k -point decomposed charge density. As seen from Fig. 5.5(c), edges in the top of VBM have $\text{O-}p_x$ and $\text{O-}p_y$ orbital character, and the hybridization of these states are also shown in the same figure. While the CBM has some p_z orbital character from the O atoms, but as the energy of the state increases, the d orbitals from Ca atoms start to contribute, see ⑧ in the same figure.

Electronic properties of Ca(OH)_2 are quite different from similar 2D graphene-like structures. Unlike TMDs (such as MoS_2 and WSe_2) that exhibit indirect-to-direct band gap crossover when going from bulk to a single layer structure, Ca(OH)_2 is a direct band gap semiconductor which is independent of the number of layers. Although the energy band gap at the Γ point decreases from 4.03 to 3.67 eV for a monolayer structure, the electronic dispersion of the valence band edge remains almost unchanged, see Fig. 5.5(d). As shown in Fig. 5.5(e) the conduction band states mainly originate from Ca atoms, while the valence states are mainly composed of the orbitals of O atoms.

Our magnetic state analysis shows that unless a defect is formed in/on the structure, there is no spin polarization in the ground state of both bulk and monolayer Ca(OH)_2 . Therefore, Ca(OH)_2 is a non-magnetic insulator regardless of its dimension for the structure.

Moreover, it was seen that the spin-orbit interaction has no considerable effect on the bond lengths and the overall electronic dispersion (except for a 26 meV splitting in the VBM at the Γ point, see Fig. 5.5(f)). Due to the presence of inversion symmetry of Ca(OH)_2 , the degeneracy of spin-up and spin-down states still remains, this is also confirmed by the results of our calculation.

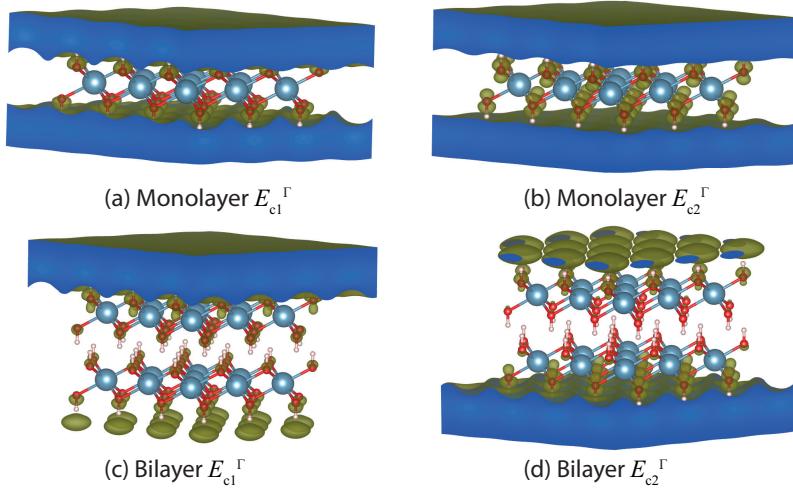


Fig. 5.6 Two lowest conduction band charge density of monolayer and bilayer $\text{Ca}(\text{OH})_2$ at the Γ point.

Band and k -point decomposed charge density in Fig. 5.5 are kept with the same isosurface level for comparison. However, as we further reduced the isosurface level at ④ in (d) and (g) of Fig. 5.5, which is the lowest conduction band of the monolayer at the Γ point, E_{c1}^{Γ} , charge density forms a planar state parallel to the layer on both sides, see Fig. 5.6(a). This is also the case for the second lowest non-spin-resolved conduction band at the same k -point, E_{c2}^{Γ} , see Fig. 5.6(b). These two states are important due to their unique character and having energies right below the ionization energy. Such exceptional states having free-electron-like dispersion were reported before[268, 269] for doped graphite. To study the trend in these states, the same states were plotted for bilayer $\text{Ca}(\text{OH})_2$, see (c) and (d) in Fig. 5.6. E_{c1}^{Γ} and E_{c2}^{Γ} have lower energies than ionization energy. Therefore, electrons are still close and bind to both sides of monolayers as seen from the charge density. In the case of bilayers, interestingly, these states appear only on one side of the bilayer.

5.1.6 Mechanical properties

We present the quantities that describe the mechanical properties of $\text{Ca}(\text{OH})_2$ in table 5.2. First, the in-plane Young's modulus of the bulk structure is calculated.

Bulk Ca(OH)₂ has an in-plane Young's modulus of 55.0 N/m and an in-plane shear modulus of 21.23 N/m. Both these quantities indicate a flexible nature to in-plane tensile and shear deformation of bulk Ca(OH)₂. In addition, bulk Ca(OH)₂ has an in-plane Poisson's ratio of 0.30. Additionally, the value of the in-plane stiffness for bulk Ca(OH)₂ is calculated to be 60.1 J/m².

If we go from bulk to bilayer Ca(OH)₂, we see a reduction in both the in-plane Young's modulus or the in-plane shear modulus, which are 50.7 N/m and 19.16 N/m, respectively. The in-plane Poisson's ratio on the other hand is slightly increased to 0.32 and becomes more spongy-like as opposed to more cork-like character[270]. In addition, the in-plane stiffness value of bilayer Ca(OH)₂ is calculated to be 55.6 J/m².

We found that monolayer Ca(OH)₂ has a quite low in-plane Young's modulus (50.7 N/m) when compared to BN (278.2 N/m). The in-plane Poisson's ratio (0.33) and the in-plane shear modulus (19.08 N/m) of the monolayer are similar with those for bilayer, and for BN, they are 0.22 and 113.5 N/m respectively. The calculated values of the in-plane stiffness of monolayer Ca(OH)₂ is 53.2 J/m².

5.1.7 Vibrational properties

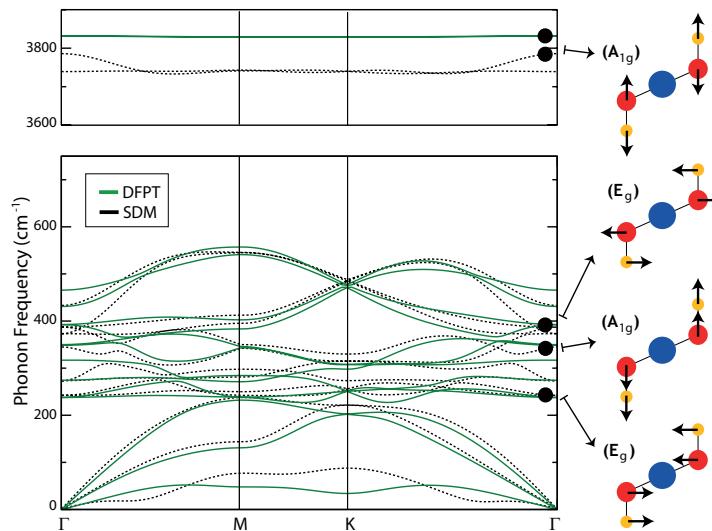


Fig. 5.7 Phonon dispersion of monolayer Ca(OH)₂.

Lastly, for the analysis of the vibrational spectrum and further examination of the dynamical stability of monolayer Ca(OH)_2 , we performed a calculation of the phonon spectrum using both the first-principles small displacement methodology (SDM)[260] and density functional perturbation methodology (DFPT)[172]. Here the non-quadratic dispersion of the flexural mode around the zone center is directly related to the insufficient FFT grid along the vacuum direction. It is seen from Fig. 5.7 that similar to the Raman shift measurements observed from the bulk crystal structure, the monolayer material has also high-frequency OH stretching modes at $3700\text{-}3800\text{ cm}^{-1}$.

Further analysis of the analysis of the phonon branches shows that the decomposition of the vibrational representation of optical modes at the zone center is $\Gamma = 4E_u + 2A_{2u} + 4E_g + 2A_{1g}$. As shown in the right panel of Fig. 5.7 there are four Raman-active phonon branches around 240, 350, 390 and $3700\text{-}3800\text{ cm}^{-1}$. It is also worth to note that differing from other TMD structures having 1T phase, the presence of H atoms results in the existence of two different E_g and A_{1g} modes. Here the phonon dispersion has real eigenfrequencies in the whole Brillouin Zone, which is another indication of the stability of monolayer Ca(OH)_2 .

5.1.8 Summary

By performing first-principles calculations on bulk, bilayer and monolayer Ca(OH)_2 and experimental confirmation of the bulk crystal layered structure, we have predicted several important properties of this material and its stability. We found that: (i) Ca(OH)_2 crystals are environmentally stable and their stable structures can be synthesized by experimental methods; (ii) Experimentally, we also demonstrated that Ca(OH)_2 crystals can be grown in layered form and also be exfoliated on arbitrary substrates; (iii) The dimensionality of Ca(OH)_2 will not change the electronic, structural and magnetic properties qualitatively. Nevertheless, intrinsic mechanical stiffness of each layer will become slightly stiffer as the system goes from monolayer to bilayer. (iv) Interlayer interaction is mainly a vdWs dispersion-type force, and the strength of the interaction is stronger than that of similar layered materials (e.g MoS_2 and graphite). (v) The conduction states which have a free-electron-like character may be utilized for high-mobility electron transfer.

We believe that the stable structure and the unique electronic properties of ultra-thin Ca(OH)₂, predicted for the first time here, will trigger interest in this new class of materials.

5.2 Number of layers: Few-layer of pentasilicene²

5.2.1 Introduction

Recently, a new 2D structure for carbon was proposed, called penta-graphene[201]. This crystal is composed entirely of pentagonal rings of C atoms with mixed sp²/sp³ orbital hybridization. However, the silicon counterpart of this structure, penta-silicene, contains a dynamical instability in its monolayer form. A few attempts have been made to stabilize this new Si structure by hydrogenation[271] and chemical doping[272].

In the present work, we construct multilayer structures of penta-silicene. We use density functional theory to explore their stability and physical properties. Two types of stacking for the penta-silicene layers are found to give stable few-layer structures. These different stacking types lead to completely different electronic properties since one leads to metallic and the other to semiconducting behavior. Somewhat surprisingly, we found that bilayer penta-silicene has lower formation energy than the most stable hexagonal silicene bilayers. Furthermore, we found that the band gaps of these semiconducting penta-silicene bilayers can be tuned by mechanical strain. We first explore the stability of monolayer penta-silicene and demonstrate its dynamical instability. This forms the motivation to study few-layer systems. Then we investigate different stacking possibilities and the resulting stability. Further, we study their mechanical properties by calculating their elastic constants. We also compare bilayer penta-silicene to the most stable bilayer hexagonal silicene structures. Lastly, The electronic properties of multilayered penta-silicene are discussed.

5.2.2 Computational details

Simulation program: VASP and Phonopy

²This work is published: P7.

Energy cut-off: 500 eV

Pseudopotentials: PBE-GGA(PAW)

k points (Monkhorst-Pack): $17 \times 17 \times 1$ and $23 \times 23 \times 1$ for insulating and metallic systems, respectively

Vacuum: 20 Å

Energy and force convergence criterion: 10^{-8} eV and 10^{-7} eV/Å, respectively

phonon calculation: finite displacement method

Supercell for phonon calculation: $4 \times 4 \times 1$ and $3 \times 3 \times 2$ for few-layer and bulk systems, respectively

Ab initio molecular dynamics: Parrinello-Rahman (NpT) dynamics [273, 274] and a Langevin thermostat [275]

Ab initio molecular dynamics (Energy cut-off): 300 eV

Ab initio molecular dynamics (time step): 2 fs

Ab initio molecular dynamics (temperature): 100 K

Ab initio molecular dynamics (simulation time): 6 ps

5.2.3 Monolayer pentasilicene

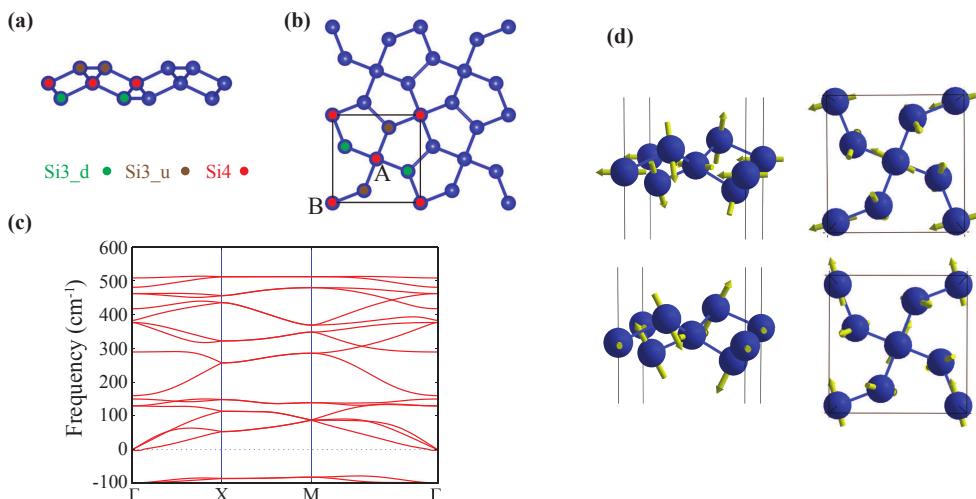


Fig. 5.8 (a) Side view and (b) top view of the atomic structure, (c) phonon spectrum and (d) two vibration modes with imaginary frequency of monolayer pentasilicene. Visualization of vibration modes is done with the V_Sim package [276].

The layer group symmetry of monolayer penta-silicene (p-Si) is $p\bar{4}2_1m$ (58). As shown in Fig. 5.8(a) and Fig. 5.8(b), the primitive cell contains six silicon atoms,

of which two have fourfold coordination (Si4) and four have threefold coordination (Si3). Two of the Si3 atoms reside above the Si4 atoms, denoted as Si3_u, while the other two are below the Si4 atoms, denoted as Si3_d. The Si4 atoms are bonded to four Si3 atoms while the Si3 atoms are connected to two Si4 atoms and one neighboring Si3 atom. Note that the two Si4 atoms have equivalent environments which are rotated by approximately 41° with respect to each other. Therefore, in analogy to graphene, we can relate these two equivalent Si4 atoms to sublattices which in the following will be referred to as the A and B sublattice.

The dynamical stability of this structure can be studied through its phonon spectrum. As noted before[271, 272] the phonon spectrum of monolayer p-Si contains imaginary frequencies, as shown in Fig. 5.8(c), which is a clear signature of its instability. The corresponding atomic vibrations of the two imaginary frequencies at the Γ point are shown in Fig. 5.8(d). These modes correspond mainly to out-of-plane vibrations of the Si3 atoms with respect to the Si4 atoms. As a consequence, the structure is found to fall apart, indicating that there is no stable form of monolayer p-Si. However, the addition of extra layers could reduce these out of plane vibrations and stabilize the structure. This is the motivation to study few-layer p-Si.

5.2.4 Multilayers of pentasilicene structures

Table 5.3 The cohesive energy (E_{coh}), the interlayer binding distance (d_{inter}), the interlayer binding energy (E_{inter}), number of interlayer bonds (N_b) and energy per bond (E_{bond}) of the four possible stacking types of bilayer p-Si. The interlayer binding energy per unit cell is defined as $E_{inter} = E_{bi} - 2E_{mono}$.

structure	E_{coh} (eV/atom)	d_{inter} (Å)	E_{inter} (eV)	N_b	E_{bond} (eV)
AA	-4.129	0.795	-3.502	4	-0.875
AA _r	-4.113	2.379	-3.318	2	-1.659
AB	-3.968	2.174	-1.574	2	-0.787
AB _r	-4.147	1.893	-3.725	2	-1.862
AB _r ^d	-4.185	1.896	-4.174	2	-2.087

When considering two layers, different stacking configurations are possible. Here we focus on the so-called AA and AB stacking modes of the aforementioned

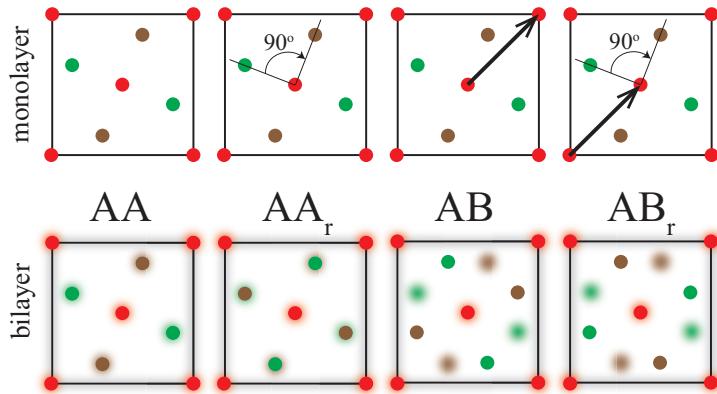


Fig. 5.9 Schematic illustration of the four stacking types for bilayer p-Si. The colors of the symbols correspond to those of the monolayer in Fig. 5.8(a) and Fig. 5.8(b). The bottom layer in the bilayer is blurred for clarity. The arrow represents translation and the angle represents the rotation of the top layer with respect to the bottom layer.

sublattices (see Fig. 5.9). The stacking in which both layers have the same in-plane orientation and the Si atoms are put right on top of each other is called AA stacking. AB stacking arises by shifting the A sublattice of one layer to the B sublattice of the other. This nomenclature was also used by Wang et al. [277] for bilayer penta-graphene. Although penta-silicene has a tetragonal lattice symmetry, the highest proper rotational symmetry order is two. Therefore, there are also two different possible orientations of the upper layer with respect to the lower one: One in which the two layers have the same orientation and another in which one layer is rotated over 90° with respect to the other one. We denote this last orientation with a subscript *r* to show that it results from a 90° rotation, e.g. AA_r. Therefore, there are four possible stacking types for bilayer p-Si. Note that AB_r stacking corresponds to the recently proposed bulk T12 phase for group IVA elements[278]. However, as discussed in more detail below, perfect AB_r stacking is not stable in the case of multilayer penta-silicene. A considerable distortion of the outer layers is required to stabilize AB_r stacking. The distorted structure, which will be referred to as AB_r^d in the following, is obtained by breaking the symmetry between the two Si₃ atoms at each surface side in

AB_r multilayers. In this way, one of the two Si_3 atoms acquires sp^2 hybridization and loses an electron to the other Si_3 atom that has sp^3 hybridization.

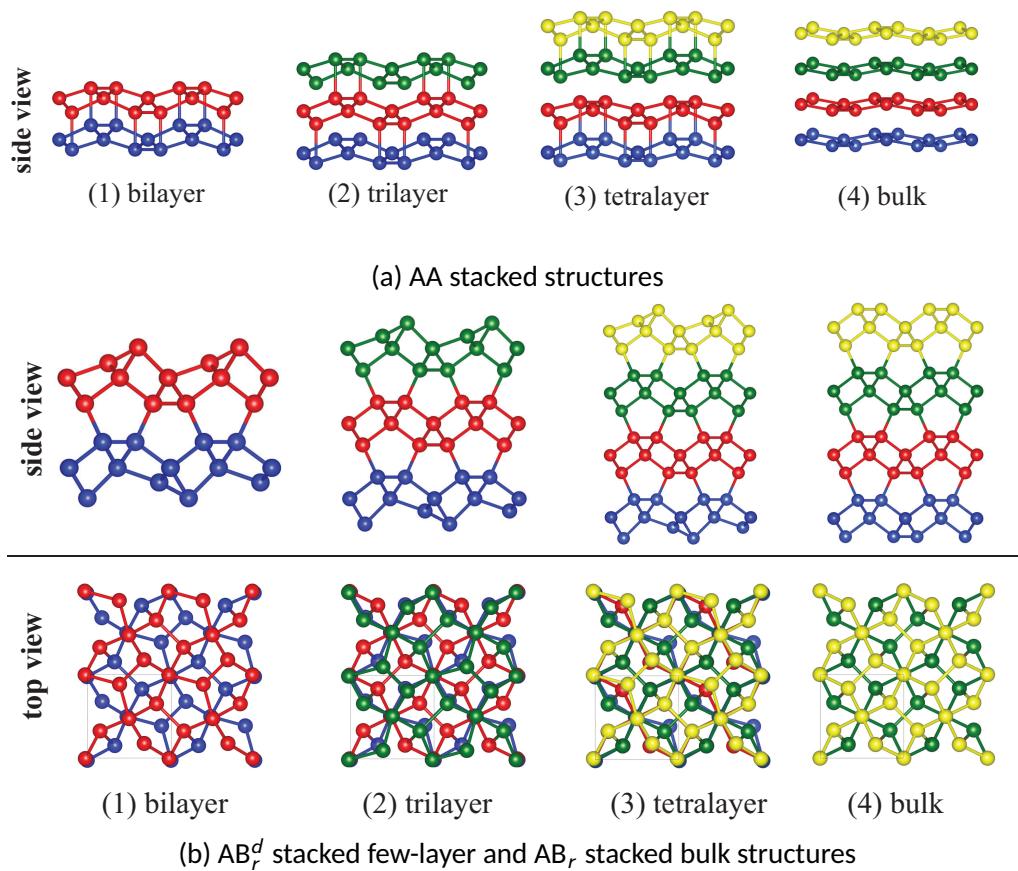


Fig. 5.10 Atomic structure of the 2×2 supercell of few-layer p-Si. The number of atomic layers in the bulk structure is fixed to four for comparison (i.e. $2 \times 2 \times 4$ and $2 \times 2 \times 2$ supercells for AA and AB_r stacked bulk p-Si). (Visualisation using VESTA [203]).

Table 5.4 The layer (space) group for few-layer (bulk) systems. The lattice constant (a), the interlayer distance (d_{inter}), the nearest-neighbor bond length range ($d_{\text{min/max}}$), the cohesive energy (E_{coh}), and the band gap (PBE) of few-layer and bulk p-Si.

stacking	structure	layer/space group	a (Å)	d_{inter} (Å)	d_{min} (Å)	d_{max} (Å)	E_{coh} (eV/atom)	band gap (eV)
AA	- monolayer	$p\bar{4}2_1m$ (58)	5.587	-	2.233	2.363	-3.837	0.046 ($M \rightarrow \Sigma$)
	bilayer		5.907	0.795	2.363	2.468	-4.129	metal
	trilayer	$\bar{p}\bar{4}2_1m$ (58)	5.887	1.085	2.330	2.606	-4.108	metal
	tetralayer		5.980	0.996/1.794 ^a	2.368	2.478	-4.150	metal
AB_r^d	bulk	$P\bar{4}2_1m$ (113)	6.234	1.769	2.398	2.463	-4.204	metal
	bilayer	$pb2b$ (30) $pm2a$ (31)	5.222	1.896	2.303	2.403	-4.185	0.119 ($M \rightarrow \Sigma$)
	trilayer	$p1$ (1)	5.222	1.989	2.298	2.413	-4.291	0.247 ($M \rightarrow \Sigma$)
	tetralayer	$pb2b$ (30) $pm2a$ (31)	5.221	1.997	2.298	2.413	-4.345	0.232 ($M \rightarrow \Sigma$)
AB_r	bulk	$P4_2/nmc$ (138)	5.220	1.999	2.358	2.413	-4.508	1.329 ($M \rightarrow \Delta$)

^a The first and the second number indicate the interlayer distance between two monolayers and two bilayers, respectively.

In [table 5.3](#), we compare the energies of the different stacking modes. In all cases the Si₄ atoms are not involved in interlayer bonding since their possible number of bonds is already saturated. Except for the AA stacking where all Si₃ atoms are bound to Si₃ atoms from the other layer, only half of the Si₃ atoms are bonded to the other layer in the other cases. In [table 5.3](#), the size of the interlayer binding energy and the strength per bond are given. The size of the bond energies indicate strong chemical bonding. The AB_r^d stacking mode clearly forms the most stable structure. For the rest of the section, we will only focus on the most stable AA and AB-type stacking, i.e. AA and AB_r^d.

We also investigated the stability of trilayer, tetralayer and bulk p-Si structures by adding extra layers to the stable bilayers mentioned above, their structures are shown in [Fig. 5.10\(a\)](#) and [Fig. 5.10\(b\)](#). We list their structural and energetic properties in [table 5.4](#). Extra layers increase the cohesive energy per atom due to a smaller ratio of surface atoms. For AA stacking, adding a 4th layer to a trilayer system results in a double bilayer system with lesser bonding between them. Going to AA bulk, the interlayer interaction appears to be further reduced and the buckled layers become more flat. Adding extra layers to an AB_r^d bilayer results in similar structures in which the Si₃ atoms of the surface layers become distorted. For bulk, the undistorted AB_r structure is found in which 4-fold symmetry is restored.

5.2.5 Stabilities

In this section we investigate the stability of the different multilayer structures discussed above. Phonon calculations for the AA and AB_r stacking modes reveal that only the AA bilayer is dynamically stable at low temperature. The extra bonds of the Si₃ atoms in AA-stacked structures effectively reduce out-of-plane vibrations and stabilize the structure. Although the AA-stacked bulk structure has weaker interlayer bonding, its phonon spectrum contains no imaginary frequencies, indicating its dynamical stability. The AB_r-stacked layers, on the other hand, exhibit similar out-of-plane vibrations of the outermost Si atoms as a monolayer. For AB_r^d-stacking the distortion of the outermost layer removes the instabilities from the phonon spectrum, so that these structures are also dynamically stable.

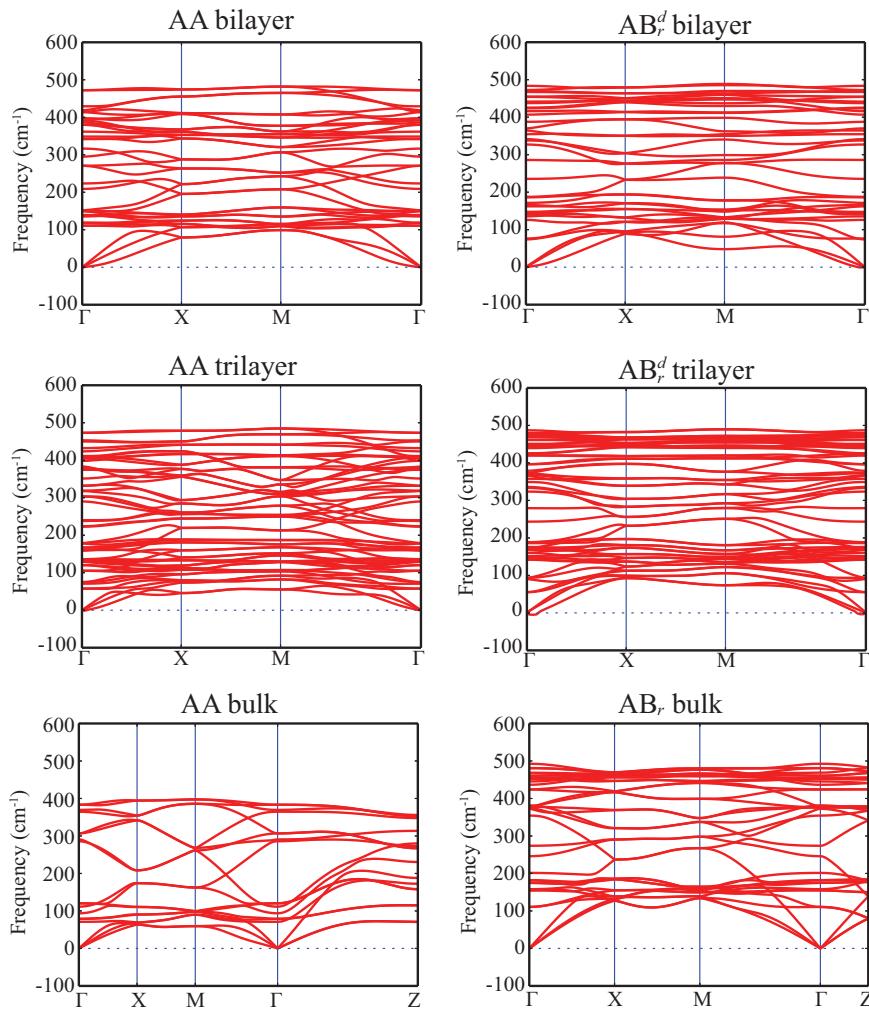


Fig. 5.11 Phonon spectra of different-stacked few-layer p-Si.

It is also interesting to see whether these structures remain stable at finite temperature. To this end, we performed *ab initio* molecular dynamics calculations at a temperature of 100 K. The evolution of the cohesive energy as a function of simulation time is shown in Fig. 5.12. For comparison, the results for the dynamically unstable monolayer are also shown. The monolayer laterally shrinks and becomes a disordered multilayered system. The AA and AB_d^d bilayer systems, on the other hand, remain stable and retain their crystalline structure.

As a final stability check, we investigate the mechanical stability of bilayer p-Si which is determined by the elastic constants of the structures. If the elastic constants satisfy the necessary and sufficient Born criteria generalized by

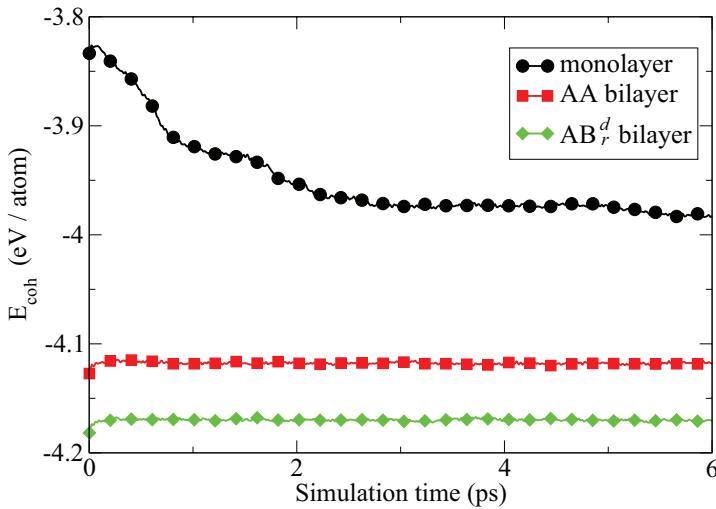


Fig. 5.12 The cohesive energy of monolayer and AA and AB_r^d stacked bilayer p-Si as a function of time at a temperature of 100 K under NpT-ensemble.

Mouhat and Coudert [138], the structures are mechanically stable. AA bilayer p-Si belong to the layer group symmetry of $p\bar{4}2_1m$, which belongs to the tetragonal symmetry groups, and the independent elastic constants in 2D are: $C_{11}=101.43$ N/m, $C_{12}=36.36$ N/m and $C_{66}=39.53$ N/m. In the case of AB_r^d bilayer p-Si, the crystal possesses pb2b or pm2a layer group symmetry which belongs to the orthorhombic crystal systems, and the independent elastic constants are: $C_{11}=C_{22}=63.83$ N/m, $C_{12}=26.92$ N/m and $C_{66}=50.43$ N/m. As discussed in chapter 3, the following criteria must be fulfilled for 2D tetragonal systems to be stable:

$$C_{11} > |C_{12}|, C_{66} > 0, \quad (5.2)$$

while 2D orthorhombic systems should satisfy:

$$C_{11} > 0, C_{11}C_{22} > C_{12}^2, C_{66} > 0. \quad (5.3)$$

As one can see, these criteria are satisfied by AA and AB_r^d bilayer p-Si which ensures their mechanical stability. Additionally, in table 5.5, we list the (2D) Young's modulus, shear modulus and Poisson's ratio of bilayer p-Si systems. An interesting aspect of the possion's ratio of AB_r^d is that it is quite high and close to the theoretical limit of 0.5. This means that this 2D material, prefers to change its

shape rather than its surface area under strain, similar to the (3D) cases of rubber and water.

Table 5.5 Mechanical properties of AB_r^d bilayer p-Si

Stacking	$E[\text{N/m}]$	$G[\text{N/m}]$	ν
AA	88.40	39.53	0.36
AB_r^d	52.47	50.41	0.42

5.2.6 Relative phase stability

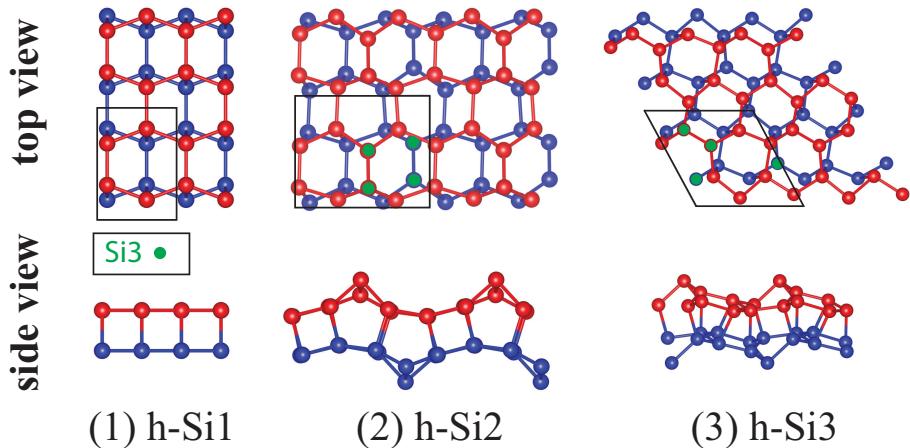


Fig. 5.13 Top and side views of the atomic structures of the 2×2 supercell of the three examined hexagonal silicene bilayers.

In this section we compare the cohesive energy of bilayer p-Si to the more familiar bilayer hexagonal silicene structures (h-Si). We examined 3 different stacking types for h-Si bilayers, denoted as h-Si1, h-Si2, and h-Si3. To the best of our knowledge, these are the most stable hexagonal bilayer structures of silicene predicted so far. The h-Si2 structure corresponds to the re-DL-Si structure suggested by Morishita et al. [279] and the h-Si3 is the hex-OR- 2×2 structure that was recently proposed by Sakai and Oshiyama [280]. These structures are constructed from the structure information provided by the authors in the supplementary material of the corresponding papers and re-optimized with our computational procedure. The h-Si1 is a new stable bilayer h-Si structure that we

Table 5.6 The interlayer distance d_{inter} , the nearest-neighbor bond length range ($d_{\text{min/max}}$) and the cohesive energy per atom E_{coh} of the most stable hexagonal bilayer silicene and bilayer p-Si.

structure	d_{inter} (Å)	d_{min} (Å)	d_{max} (Å)	E_{coh} (eV/atom)
AA bilayer p-Si	0.795	2.363	2.468	-4.129
AB_r^d bilayer p-Si	1.896	2.303	2.403	-4.185
h-Si1	2.175	2.358	2.418	-4.115
h-Si2	1.579	2.298	2.453	-4.165
h-Si3	1.378	2.288	2.473	-4.175

discovered. It is composed of two planar, non-buckled, compressed hexagonal silicene planes that are shifted along the crystal plane. This structure is interesting because although its cohesive energy is close to the former two cases, it has a non-buckled nature. To the best of our knowledge, it is the most stable non-buckled bilayer silicene discovered so far.

The cohesive energies of all the stable bilayer Si systems are given in [table 5.6](#). It is seen that the AB_r^d bilayer p-Si system has the lowest energy, about 10 meV/atom less than the most stable hexagonal silicene bilayer h-Si3. This means that the AB_r^d p-Si structure is the most stable bilayer silicon structure predicted so far, which is a very surprising result. The AA-stacked p-Si has slightly higher energy than h-Si2 and h-Si3.

5.2.7 Electronic properties

In the last part of this work, we investigate the electronic properties of few-layer and bulk p-Si. These electronic properties are mainly determined by the electronic spectrum. In [Fig. 5.14](#) and [Fig. 5.15](#), the electronic band structure of respectively AA and AB_r^d p-Si multilayers and their bulk counterpart is shown. The band structure of the unstable monolayer is also calculated for comparison. Monolayer p-Si is an indirect semiconductor with a band gap of 0.046 eV (PBE). The band-edge states are mainly composed of p_z orbitals of Si3 atoms. In contrast to this, all AA-stacked multilayers are metallic. In the case of the AB_r^d structure, the semiconducting properties of monolayer p-Si are preserved, but the band gap changes somewhat with the number of layers. This can be understood from

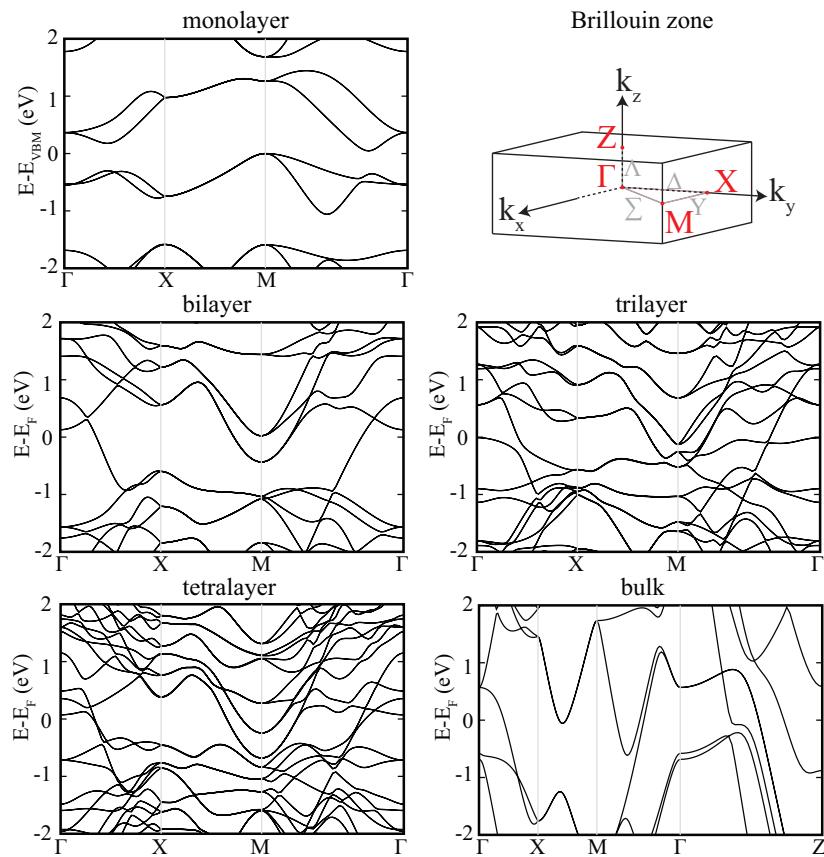


Fig. 5.14 Electronic band structure of AA stacked few-layer and bulk p-Si, and a schematic of the first Brillouin zone.

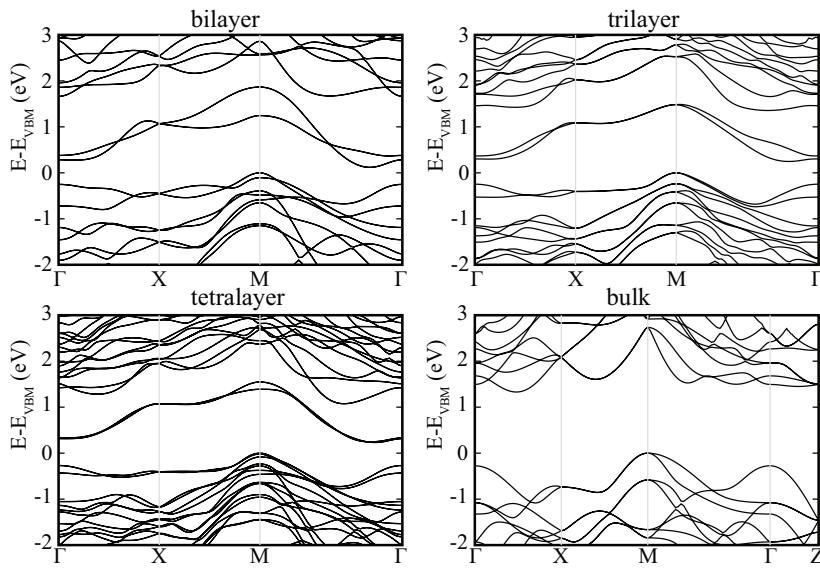


Fig. 5.15 Electronic band structures of AB_r^d stacked few-layer and AB_r stacked bulk p-Si. The results for the monolayer are shown for comparison.

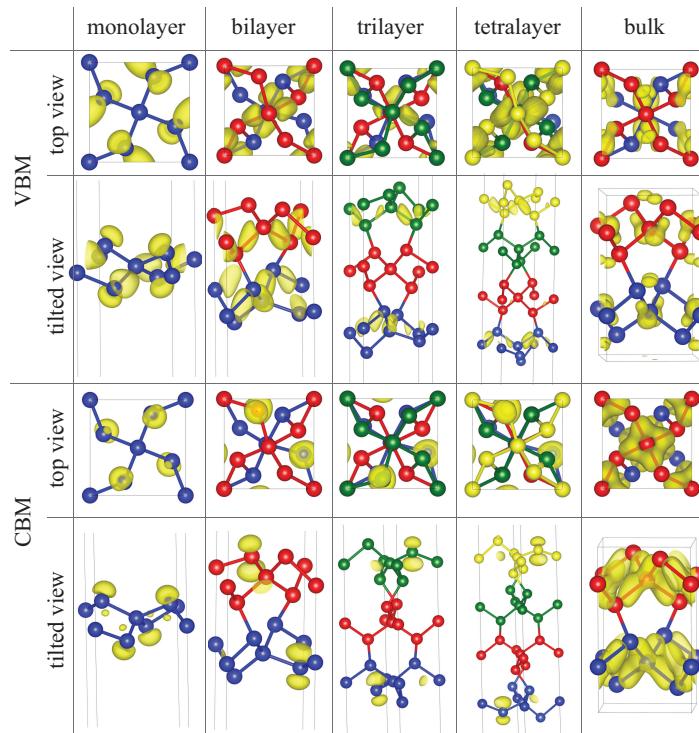


Fig. 5.16 The charge distribution of CBM and VBM in AB_r^d stacked few-layer and AB_r stacked bulk p-Si. The results for the monolayer are shown for comparison.

the position of the electron and hole states which correspond to the CBM and the VBM, respectively. As seen in Fig. 5.15, the VBM and CBM states are always localized on the outermost layers. In other words, the electronic properties are mainly determined by the surface region which is nearly independent of the slab thickness. For AB_r-stacked bulk p-Si, there is no surface and the VBM and CBM correspond to bulk states. This explains the much larger band gap (1.33 eV) in the bulk case.

5.2.8 Summary

In this work, we proposed several stable structures for few-layer pentasilicene. The stability of these structures was confirmed via their phonon spectrum, finite-temperature molecular dynamics, and their mechanical properties. The type of stacking mode, AA or AB, of few-layer pentasilicene has a crucial influence on the electronic properties: AA-stacked systems are metallic, while AB_r^d stacked ones are semiconducting. Surprisingly, the AB_r^d stacked bilayer pentasilicene has lower energy than the most stable bilayer hexagonal silicene structures, which makes it the most stable predicted form of bilayer silicon.

5.3 Mechanical strain: Carrier mobility enhancement in TiS_3 monolayer with strain³

5.3.1 Introduction

Recently, monolayers of TiS_3 [281, 282] are synthesized as a new type of promising 2D material having high carrier mobility for high-performance electronic device applications. Here, we will study how strain can be utilized to modify the mobility of the carriers in this material. Enhancement of the mobility under strain has been reported and measured before for silicon layers on $\text{Si}_x\text{Ge}_{1-x}$ substrates [283, 284]. According to which, a mobility enhancement up to about 76 % at room temperature was achieved. First-principles calculations have been frequently used to determine the intrinsic mobility of 2D materials.[285–287].

³This work is published: P6.

There are also several works that investigated the mobility of monolayer materials under strain[164, 288, 289], including the strain-controlled anisotropic of the mobility in phosphorene [164]. The vertical compression of phosphorene bilayers leads to a two orders of magnitude increase of the mobility[288], strain-enhanced mobility of MoS₂ up to a factor of 10 [289]. In the last two cases, enhancement of the mobility results from the decrease of DPC which is consistent with our situation that will be discussed in our results. Inspired by significant improvements of the transport properties of 2D materials under strain, we investigate the strain dependence of the carrier mobility of TiS₃ monolayers under mechanical strain at 300 K. We find that more than an order of magnitude enhancement of the electron mobility can be achieved by the tensile strain. Furthermore the hole mobility also has moderate enhancement effects.

5.3.2 Computational details

Simulation program: VASP and Phonopy

Energy cut-off: 700 eV

Pseudopotentials: PBE-GGA(PAW)

k points (Monkhorst-Pack): 25×25×1 for insulating and metallic systems, respectively

Vacuum: 20 Å

Energy and force convergence criterion: 10⁻⁸ eV and 10⁻⁷ eV/Å, respectively

phonon calculation: finite displacement method

Supercell for phonon calculation: 2 × 3 × 1

As discussed before, band gap is underestimated due to the well-known semilocal functional band gap problem. However, for the position shifts of the valence and conduction band edges with an applied tensile strain, the semilocal functional can provide consistent results and trends when compared to hybrid functionals and has been successfully used in previous studies for the determination of the mobility in 2D materials[164, 287, 290].

To determine the mobility of electrons and holes, we use the deformation potential theory together with the effective mass approximation [291], which has been previously applied to several 2D systems[292–295]. The mobility, μ , of a 2D system is given by:

$$\mu = \frac{2e\hbar^3 C}{3k_B T |m^*|^2 E_d^2}. \quad (5.4)$$

where e is the electron charge and \hbar is the reduced planck constant. C is the elastic modulus along the transport direction. It is defined as $C = (\partial^2 E_{total}/\partial \varepsilon^2)/S_0$, where E_{total} is the calculated total energy of TiS₃, ε is the strain applied along the transport direction and S_0 is the equilibrium 2D area of the unit cell. k_B is the Boltzmann constant. T is the temperature, which is equal to 300 K throughout the section unless stated otherwise. m^* is the effective mass of the carrier along the transport direction calculated from $1/m_{e(h)}^* = \partial^2 E_{c(v)}(k)/\partial k^2 \hbar^2$, where $E_{c(v)}(k)$ is the energy dispersion near the CBM (VBM). E_d is the DPC along the transport direction. It is defined as $E_d^{e(h)} = \Delta E_{CBM(VBM)}/(\delta l/l)$, where $\Delta E_{CBM(VBM)}$ is the energy shift of the band edges with respect to the vacuum level under a small dilation δl of the lattice constant l . We fix $\delta l/l$ to 0.005 as in previous calculations [294]. In this theory, the dominant scattering process is the longitudinal acoustic phonon scattering (AS). However, for a polar material, scattering on optical phonon modes and other scattering sources should be taken into account at high temperatures[285]. Nevertheless, in this work, we will focus solely to the effect of AS on the mobility and its dependence on the strain for the following reasons: 1) The dominant role of AS is not suppressed in polar materials, so it is still an important part that determines the mobility, 2) To separately study different mobility-controlled mechanisms, specially their strain dependence, and 3) It is computationally less expensive.

5.3.3 Unstrained system

The atomic structure of a TiS₃ monolayer is shown in Fig. 5.17. The unit cell has a monoclinic crystal structure. The calculated lattice constants are $a = 5.03$ Å and $b = 3.41$ Å, in good agreement with previous calculations [295, 296] and close to the experimental values for the bulk structure ($a=4.958$, $b=3.401$)[297]. The monolayer is constructed of connecting quasi-one-dimensional chains of TiS₃ triangular prisms extending along the b direction, as shown in Fig. 5.17. One can spot a significant structural anisotropy in the system along the chain direction (green arrow) and the perpendicular direction (red arrow). Therefore, we can make a clear distinction when discussing between these two directions throughout the section.

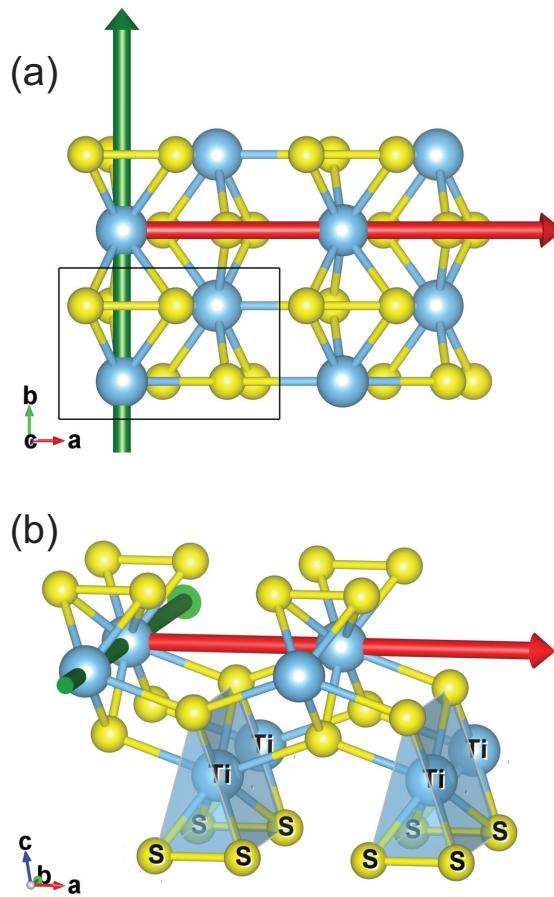


Fig. 5.17 (a) Top and (b) tilted views of a 2×2 supercell of monolayer TiS_3 . Two crystallographic directions (where the strain is applied or the mobility is calculated) are shown with red and green arrows.

As shown in Fig. 5.18, monolayer TiS_3 is a direct band gap semiconductor having a band gap of 0.29 eV (1.06 eV [294]) that is calculated with PBE (HSE06) functional at the Γ -point. The CBM has the largest contribution from $d_{x^2-y^2}$ and d_{z^2} orbitals of the Ti atoms, while the VBM is mostly dominated by the p_x orbital of the S atoms and the d_{xz} orbitals of the Ti atoms. The x and y directions coincide with the a and b directions, respectively. The z direction is taken perpendicular to the xy plane. Later, we will discuss in detail how these states change their energies when they are exposed to mechanical strain.

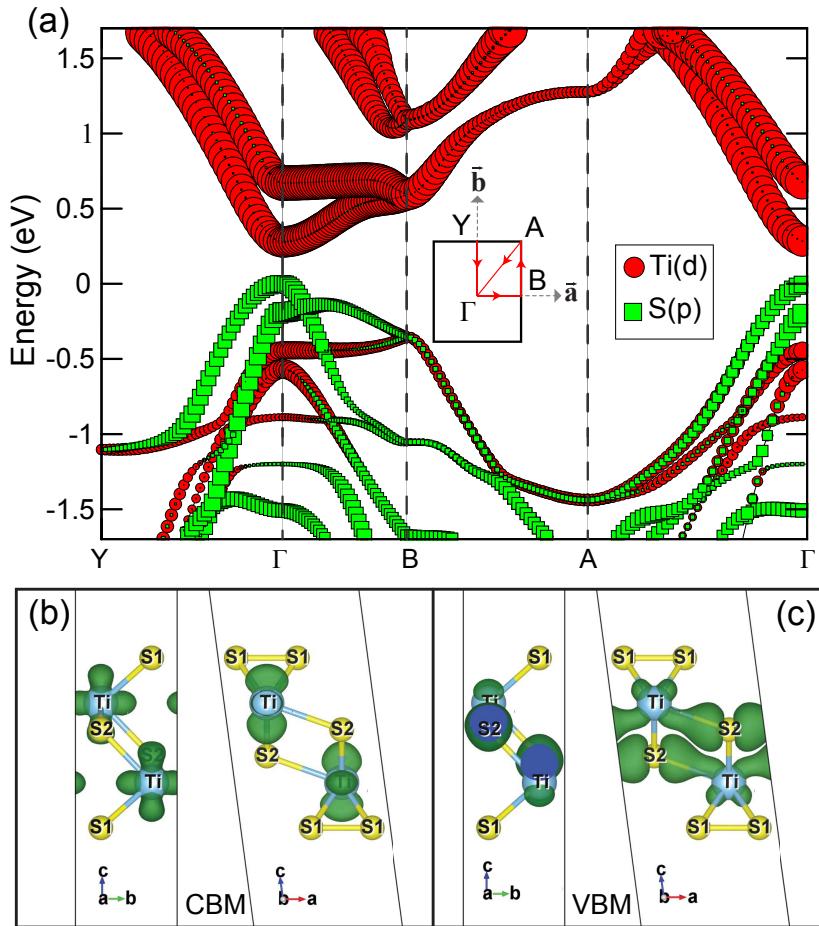


Fig. 5.18 (a) The site and orbital-projected band structure (calculated using PBE functional) of the unstrained TiS_3 monolayer. Decomposed charge density of CMB (b) and VBM (c) at the Γ point are presented.

To gain deeper insight about the binding nature in the TiS_3 monolayer, we calculate the Bader charges[218–221]. According to the Bader analysis, each Ti atom donates 1.61 e^- to eight S atoms surrounding it. Each of the surface S atoms, labelled as S1 in Fig. 5.18, binds only with two Ti atoms and gains 0.34 e^- net charge. Two of these S1 atoms form a covalent bond between them. While each of the S atoms between two Ti layers, S2 in Fig. 5.18, binds with four neighbouring Ti atoms, and has 0.81 e^- net charge accumulated on it. The electronegativity differences between S (2.58) and Ti (1.54) is calculated as 1.04, and thus belongs to the polar covalent bond class [298]. This value is large as compared to that of

MoS_2 where Mo (2.16) and S (2.58) have a difference in electronegativity of 0.41. Therefore, S-Ti bonds are considered as covalent bonds.

Table 5.7 The electron (hole) effective mass (m^*), the elastic modulus (C), the DPC (E_d), and the electron (hole) mobility (μ) of phosphorene and monolayer TiS_3 .

Material	Carrier type	Direction	$m^*(m_e)$	$C(\text{N/m})$	$E_d(\text{eV})$	$\mu(10^3 \text{ cm}^2\text{V}^{-1}\text{s}^{-1})$
Phosphorene	electron	armchair	0.20	24.30	0.65	1.93
	hole	zigzag	6.89	103.14	0.11	25.36
TiS_3 monolayer	electron	<i>a</i>	1.52	82.68	0.53	1.82
		<i>b</i>	0.40	133.76	0.84	17.08
	hole	<i>a</i>	0.30	82.68	2.53	2.00
		<i>b</i>	0.99	133.76	4.10	0.11

Before applying strain to our system, we summarize the mobility and related parameters for the unstrained TiS_3 in [table 5.7](#), which are in agreement with previous calculations [294]. Similar data for phosphorene are presented for comparison. The results for phosphorene are recalculated with the same computational parameters as TiS_3 . The mobility of the electron in a TiS_3 monolayer has an impressive level, which is an order of magnitude larger than that in phosphorene. However, resulting from very small DPC, the hole mobility in phosphorene is an order of magnitude larger than that in TiS_3 . Moreover, the anisotropy of the effective mass along different crystallographic directions is much more pronounced for phosphorene as compared to that in TiS_3 . Overall, phosphorene is softer than TiS_3 as far as the elastic modulus is concerned.

5.3.4 Dynamical stability under mechanical strain

Applying mechanical strain may have important effects on the stability of a structure. Therefore, it is crucial to know if strain applied to the system does not induce any structural instability. To this purpose, we calculate the elastic modulus and phonon spectrum for the TiS_3 monolayer under various strain values in order to confirm its dynamical stability. [Fig. 5.19](#) shows the elastic modulus along the *a* and *b* directions as a function of applied strain. These values correspond to the elastic constants, i.e. C_{11} and C_{22} . Here, C_{11} (C_{22}) reflects the mechanical response of the TiS_3 monolayer to a strain applied along the *a* (*b*) direction.

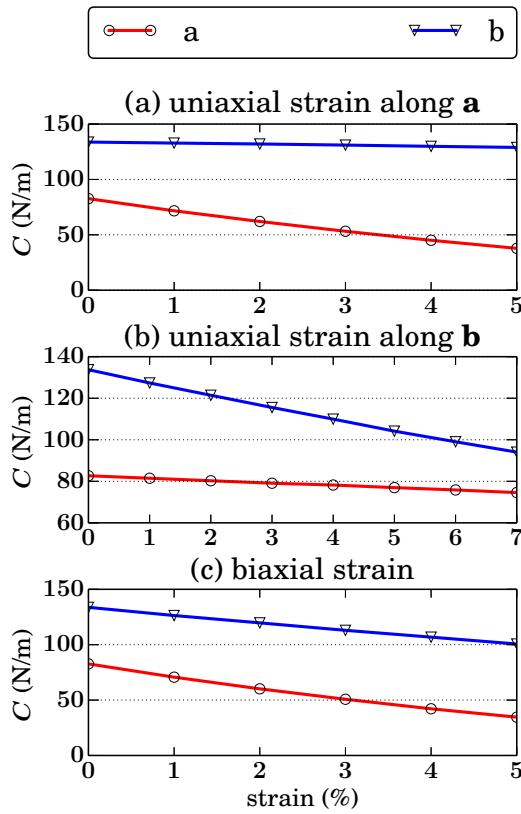


Fig. 5.19 Calculated elastic modulus along the a and b directions under mechanical strain.

The calculated value of C_{11} (C_{22}) for the unstrained TiS₃ is 133.76 (82.68) N/m, in good agreement with previous calculations [294, 299]. Note that the calculated elastic constants are all positive and they fulfill the mechanical stability criteria, i.e. C_{11} and $C_{22} > 0$. These results clearly imply that monolayer TiS₃ is less stiff than graphene and single layer h-BN. However, it is mechanically superior as compared to MoS₂ and phosphorene[300]. Furthermore, C_{22} is always larger than C_{11} , meaning that the a direction is stiffer than the b direction.

In order to gain further insight into the stability of TiS₃ monolayer, we calculate the phonon dispersion under different types of strain. As shown in Fig. 5.20, uniaxial strain applied along the a and b direction induce dynamical instability in the system at strain values of 6% and 8%, respectively. Note that the highest optical mode reaches up to 550 cm⁻¹ and does not vary with strain. Consistent

with our results of the elastic constants, the optical phonon modes are more sensitive to strain applied along the *b* direction, see Fig. 5.20. Except for the topmost mode, phonon branches move downward with strain applied along the *b* direction. We observe an average downward shift of 25 cm^{-1} at 8%, which can be easily detected by Raman spectroscopy. The observed instability at large strain values is due to the presence of imaginary vibrational frequencies, suggesting a structural phase transition. The dynamical stable range of black phosphorus is 15% which is much larger than that of TiS_3 [301]. Due to its puckered structure, the former is able to sustain large mechanical deformations. The biaxial case is the combination of two uniaxial strains applied along the *a* and *b* directions, and the stable range is determined by the lowest strain value, i.e. 6% applied along the *a* direction.

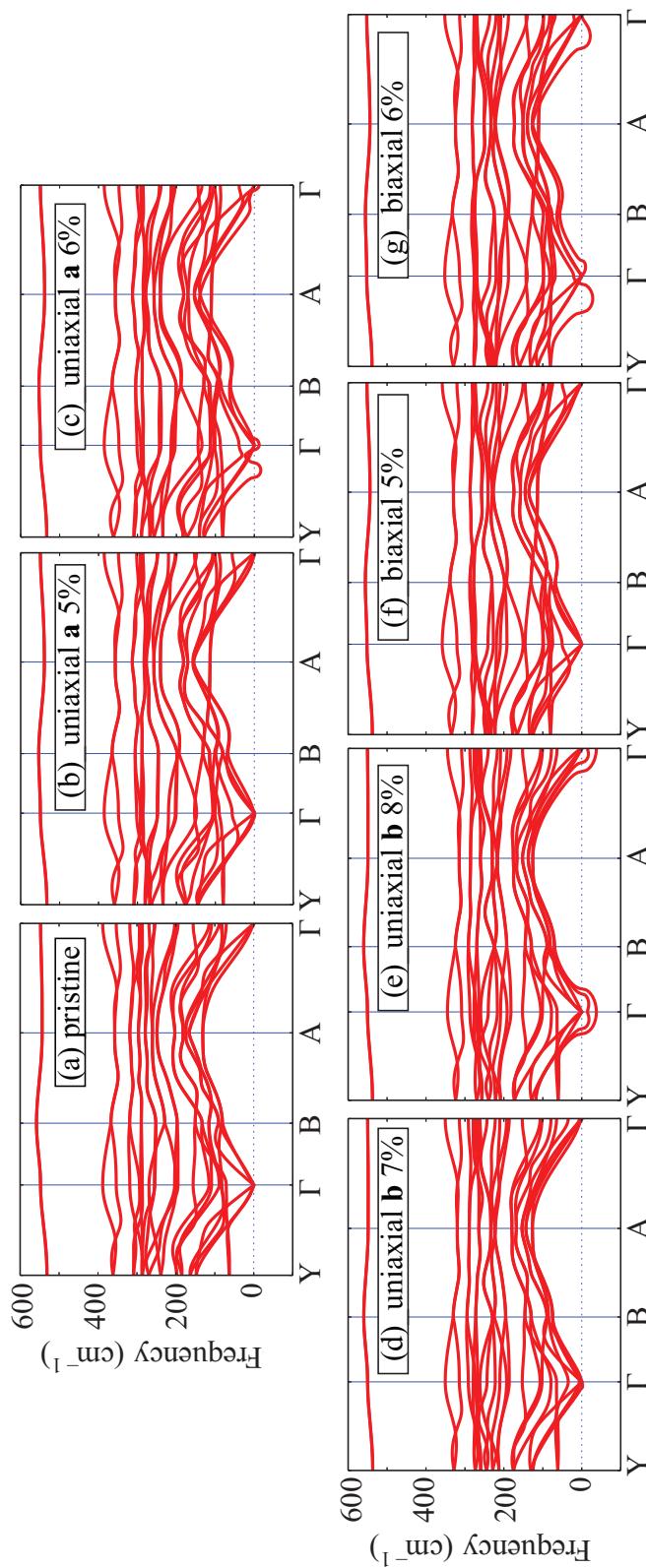


Fig. 5.20 Calculated phonon spectrum of (a) pristine monolayer TiS_3 and that under strain (b-g).

5.3.5 Bond lengths and band gap under mechanical strain

The foremost consequence of the mechanical strain is the change of the structure parameters in the unit cell. Strain is applied by manually changing the lattice constant along the desired direction. After that, the cell parameters are kept fixed whereas the internal atomic positions are allowed to fully relax. Therefore, the latter can be considered as the response of the material to the external strain, which would carry important information about the consequential effects. The variation of the bond length provides information about how the local environment of atoms in the unit cell changes with strain. Considering this, we plot the bond lengths with respect to the different types of strain in Fig. 5.21.

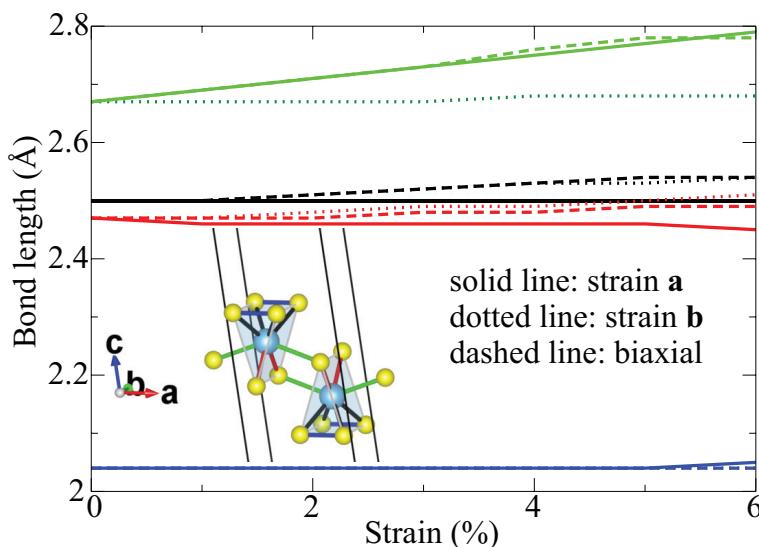


Fig. 5.21 Variation of bond lengths with strain. Color of the curves matches with the color of the bonds in the structure depicted in the inset.

In the following discussion, we correlate the variation of the CBM and VBM, as shown in Fig. 5.22, with the change of bond length by investigating their bonding character. Let us first focus on strain applied along the *a* direction. The most significant change occurs for the Ti-S bond between two neighboring prisms. As the strain increases, the local environment inside the prism hardly changes, in contrast to the bond lengths of Ti-S bonds between prisms. On the other hand, it can be seen from the decomposed charge density of the VBM at the Γ point for the unstrained TiS₃ (see Fig. 5.18(c)) that the Ti-S distance between two prisms

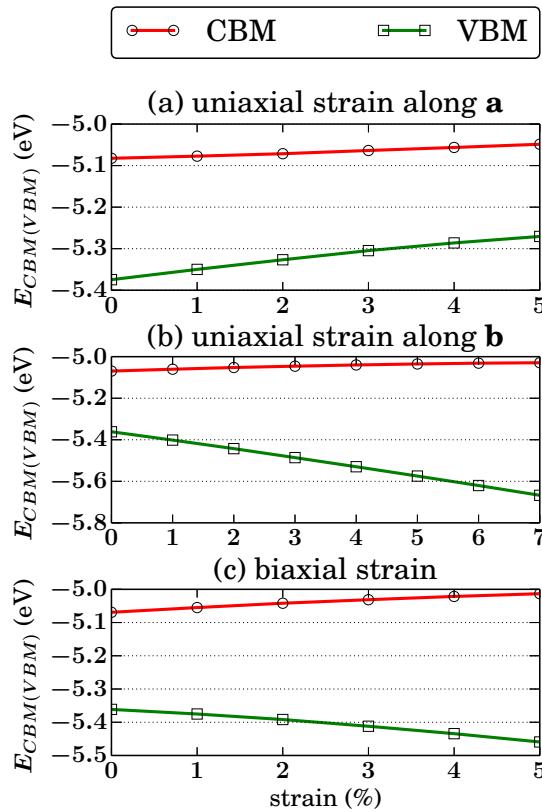


Fig. 5.22 Variation of the band edges with respect to vacuum with strain.

is controlled by the Ti-S bonding state at the VBM. Therefore, we would expect that the energy of this state increases (i.e. its binding energy decreases) with tensile strain, which can be seen in Fig. 5.22. For strain applied along the *b* direction, one can note from Fig. 5.18(c) that the VBM charge distribution along the *b* direction has a node between two prisms. Given the fact that atoms sit close to each other, this is an anti-bonding state. Therefore, we would expect that its energy decreases (i.e. its binding energy increases by depopulating the anti-bonding state) when strain along the *b* direction increases. This is true when we see the trend of the VBM with the strain applied along the *b* direction in Fig. 5.22. The CBM mostly gives a nonbonding state regardless of the direction, see Fig. 5.18(b). This results in a much slower variation of the energy of the CBM under tensile strain, but an overall small change is observed.

[Fig. 5.22](#) also provides information about the variation of the band gap under strain, which agrees well with previous calculations [302, 303]. While the band gap decreases under strain applied along the a direction, it increases with strain applied along the b direction. The band gap increase in the latter case was experimentally confirmed [302]. By the help of strain engineering, it is possible to tune the optical gap from far infrared to near infrared. The nature of the band gap remains direct within the considered tensile strain range where TiS_3 is dynamically stable. We find that biaxial strain is a superposition of the above two situations as can be seen from [Fig. 5.22](#).

5.3.6 Effective mass, DPC and mobility under mechanical strain

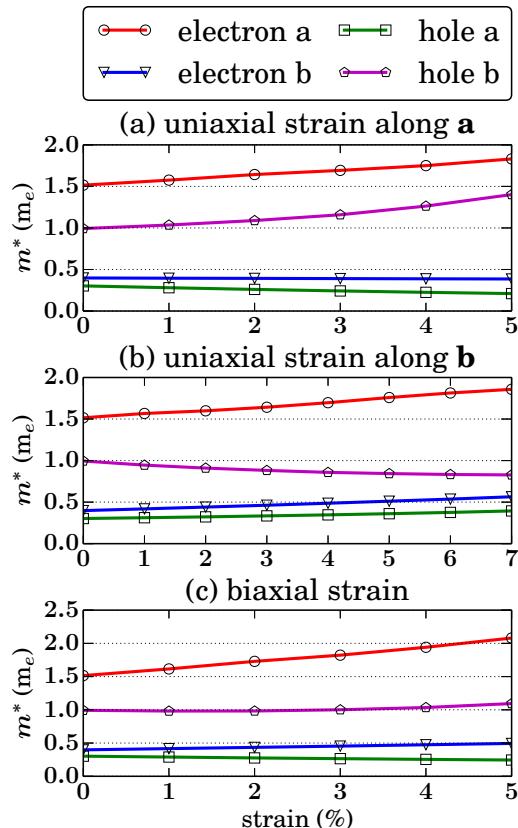


Fig. 5.23 Variation of the effective mass of electrons and holes along the a and b directions at the Γ -point with strain.

Using the computational setup described above, we estimate the acoustic-phonon-limited mobility of monolayer TiS_3 under strain via [equation \(5.4\)](#). According to this equation, at a particular temperature (e.g. 300 K), three different physical parameters, namely the elastic modulus C , the carrier effective mass m^* and the DPC or E_d , are subjected to a change under strain. Previously, we already discussed the variation of the elastic modulus with strain, which is shown in [Fig. 5.19](#). Now we discuss how the effective mass and DPC change under strain. [Fig. 5.23](#) shows the effective mass of both hole and electron for different directions and strain values. All curves change monotonically. There is no abrupt change of the slope of the curves since there is no band crossing in the considered strain range, and one would expect a smooth variation for the band edges with strain. The electron mass along the a direction increases regardless of the direction of applied strain, and the magnitude of this change is the largest among both carrier effective masses along the other directions. Because of this, the degree of anisotropy in the effective mass increases as TiS_3 is subjected to strain. As for the hole effective mass, the difference along the a and b directions increases for strain applied along the a direction whereas this difference decreases for strain applied along the b direction. Such anisotropy can be utilized to modify the electronic and thermoelectric properties of TiS_3 .

Our calculations unveil that one of the most important factors that determines the mobility is the DPC. In order to evaluate the DPC, we need to apply a small dilation along the direction where the DPC is calculated. The ratio of the CBM (VBM) shift to the amount of this dilation gives DPC for electrons (holes), see [Fig. 5.24](#). Mathematically, as shown in [equation \(5.4\)](#), it is the square of a small number in the denominator. Thus the variation of DPC determines the whole ratio in [equation \(5.4\)](#) and hence the mobility, unless other quantities change dramatically, which is not the case as we have discussed. For example, in the work of Fei and Yang [164], the direction of the highest mobility change by 90° was reported, which was a result of the change in the smallest effective mass in a particular direction. In our case, we observe no band crossing and the variation of the effective mass with strain is rather small for the highest mobility directions, see [Fig. 5.23](#).

Next, we explore the mobility variation under strain, see [Fig. 5.25](#). For uniaxial strain along the a direction, the two most apparent changes are the mod-

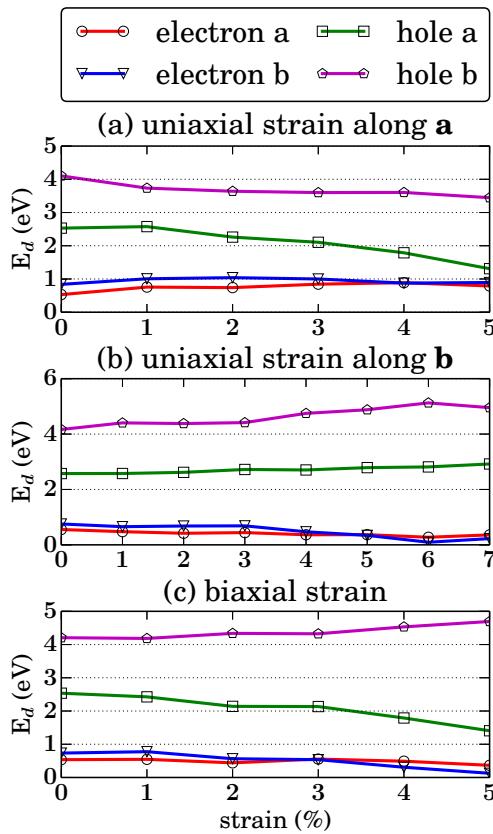


Fig. 5.24 Variation of the (a) DPC (E_d) with strain.

erate enhancement of the hole mobility along the b direction, from 2.00×10^3 to $7.08 \times 10^3 \text{ cm}^2\text{V}^{-1}\text{s}^{-1}$ and the drop of the electron mobility along the same direction, from 1.82×10^3 to $0.25 \times 10^3 \text{ cm}^2\text{V}^{-1}\text{s}^{-1}$. Although the electron mobility along the a direction for strainless TiS_3 is close to the hole mobility along the same direction, an order of magnitude difference can be realized by the help of tensile strain. Therefore, uniaxial strain applied along the a direction would be helpful to select the carrier type based on their different transport properties. For uniaxial strain along the b direction, we find a dramatic enhancement of the electron mobility along the a direction, from 1.71×10^4 to $5.53 \times 10^5 \text{ cm}^2\text{V}^{-1}\text{s}^{-1}$ at 300 K. This corresponds to a mobility enhancement from 5.13×10^4 to $1.66 \times 10^6 \text{ cm}^2\text{V}^{-1}\text{s}^{-1}$ at 100 K. The subsequent drop at 7 % can be ascribed to being close to the edge of the dynamically stable region. Furthermore, the electron mobility in the other direction (i.e. b) has a moderate enhancement

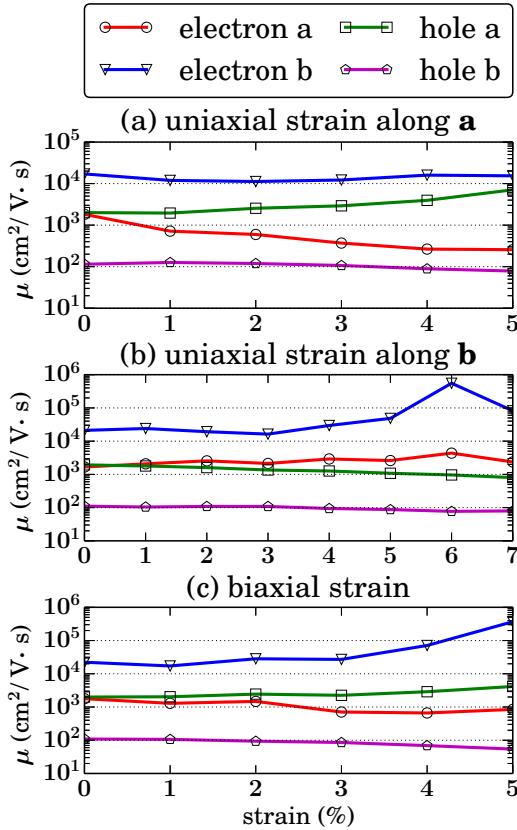


Fig. 5.25 Variation of the mobility (μ) with strain.

at strain value of 6 % as well. The electron mobility along the b direction has a considerable increase when tensile strain is applied along the b direction. The hole mobility generally tends to decrease in both directions. As stated before, the biaxial case is an effective combination of two uniaxial strains applied along the a and b directions. The electron mobility along the a direction reaches up to $3.68 \times 10^5 \text{ cm}^2\text{V}^{-1}\text{s}^{-1}$ at 5% biaxial strain.

Lastly, we discuss the effect of the optical phonon scattering on the mobility. Using a Drude-like expression, μ can be expressed as $\sim q\langle\tau\rangle/m^*$, where $\langle\tau\rangle$ is the average scattering time, and in the Matthiessen's Rule, it is given as the sum of all scattering process, i.e. $1/\tau = 1/\tau_{ph} + 1/\tau_{el} + 1/\tau_{imp} + \dots$. Here, τ_{ph} , τ_{el} and τ_{imp} are the scattering times related to electron-phonon, electron-electron and electron-impurity scattering, respectively. In a rough estimate (i.e. using Einstein's model), τ_{ph} for the longitudinal optical phonon scattering is inversely pro-

portional to the frequency of the optical modes. According to our calculations, the frequency of the phonon modes is subject to a redshift under strain. This means that the contribution of the optical phonon scattering reduces with increasing tensile strain. As a result, we can claim that our trends are persistent against the contribution of the different scattering processes.

5.3.7 Summary

In this work, we have demonstrated that, by the help of tensile strain, it is possible to enhance the carrier mobility of the TiS_3 monolayer more than an order of magnitude at 300 K and two orders of magnitude at 100 K. Phonon dispersion calculations revealed that TiS_3 becomes dynamically unstable for an uniaxial tensile strain larger than 6% (8%) applied along the a (b) direction. The degree of effective mass anisotropy can be controlled with uniaxial strain. The determining role of the DPC on the mobility in this material is confirmed. The variation of the CBM and VBM with strain was explained through the bonding character within the TiS_3 monolayer. Here, we also showed that strain engineering appears to be a quite exciting way to tune the electrical conductivity of TiS_3 .

5.4 Heterostructures: Electrical transport in 1T/2H/1T MoS₂ lateral heterostructure⁴

Another way to enrich the properties of materials is to combine different materials to form heterostructures[304–306]. They can be composites made of materials with complementary characters those perform better than each of the material individually, or materials which display new phenomena and promising properties only when acting together. Given the obvious structure anisotropy in 2D materials, there are two types of heterostructures: vertical and lateral[307], see for example Fig. 5.26. The vertical heterostructures are composed of stacks of different 2D materials. We have already seen a vertical heterostructure in the last chapter. They are held together via what holds graphite layers together: the vdW force. Thus, this type of construction is referred as vdW heterostruc-

⁴This work is submitted: P9.

tures. On the other hand, a lateral heterostructure[308, 309] is made by joining the edges of different 2D materials and the connection is mostly made through strong bonding, e.g. covalent or ionic. For this case, all the new properties result from the interface. In this section, I will present our work on the transport properties in lateral heterostructure that is made of the 1T and 2H phase of MoS₂.

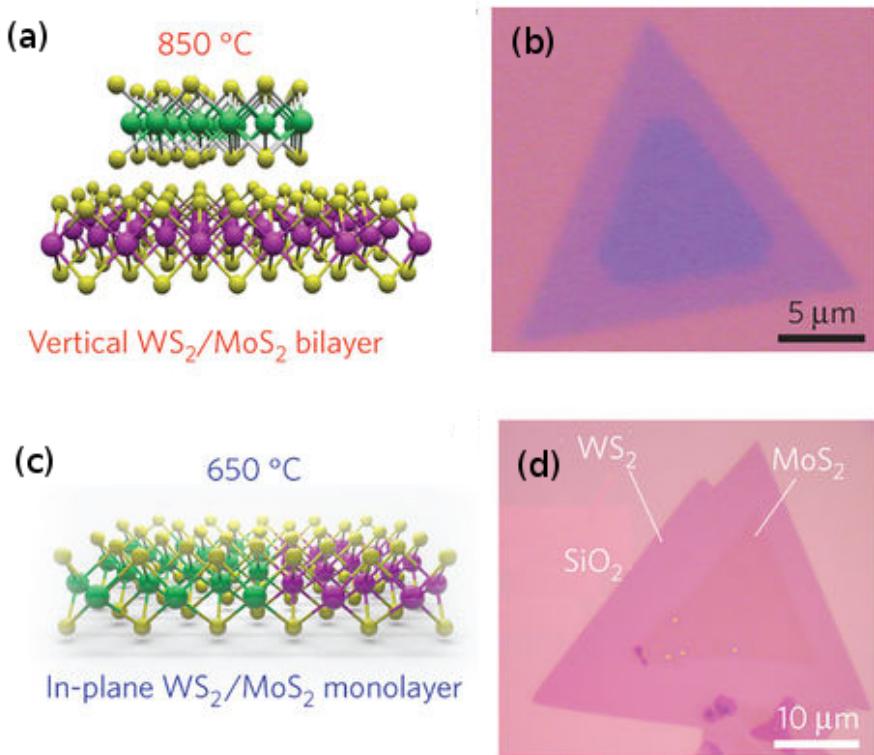


Fig. 5.26 (a) and (d) vertical and (c) and (d) lateral WS₂/MoS₂ heterostructures. Image adapted from: [310]

5.4.1 Introduction

Heterostructures are the essential components of a wide range of solid-state devices, such as transistors, solar cells, and sensors[311, 312]. They are fabricated by combining different types of materials, e.g. metals, semiconductors, and insulators. Therefore, the physical properties of the combined system are enhanced or become more controllable as compared to that of each material individually. These tailored properties are strongly related to the interface of the

two different materials where all interesting and new phenomena occur. However, along with the emergence of nanostructured materials, dimensionality has become another major factor affecting the physical properties of materials and devices along with the interface. Thus, solid-state device fabrication with heterostructures based on low-dimensional nanomaterials has attracted significant attention and a new research area in material design has been initiated where researchers are expecting unprecedented results, phenomena and physics[313–315]. Indeed, several advantages of 2D phase engineering over the 3D counterpart has already been demonstrated.[316]

As discussed before, In a vertical heterostructure, an overlapping portion of two materials is glued together mainly via interlayer vdWs interaction, while in a lateral heterostructure one-dimensional edges of two materials are contacted with covalent bonds without overlapping. The vdWs interaction in a vertical heterostructure introduces a potential gap between the two layers, which electrons have to tunnel through, resulting in higher resistance due to the reduced carrier transmission probability. Naturally, this resistance is much lower in a lateral heterostructure owing to the formation of covalent bonds that provide a path for carriers to travel across the interfaces[317, 318]. Recently, Eda et al. [319] have discovered the coexistence of multi-phase MoS₂ that is a promising material for heterostructure device fabrication due to their natural metal-semiconductor-metal structure with clear a lateral heterostructure interface[319]. Considering the distinct electronic nature of these phases, the physical properties of these heterostructures[320, 321] can be tuned by phase engineering and novel solid-state device architectures can be realized for several different future applications.

The same research group has synthesized 2D semiconducting heterostructure devices[201, 322] by using metal contacts. As a result of their experimental analysis, they have particularly pointed out the vital importance on the device performance of the geometry and electronic nature consistency between the metal contact and the heterostructure [319, 323]. Considering this fact, Kappera et al. [320] have locally induced 1T metallic phase of MoS₂ in the 1H semiconducting phase, and they measured that the edge resistance was lower than that of metal contacts by more than a factor of two. Subsequently, 1T|1H lateral heterostructures have been drawn attention as a promising contact structure hav-

ing a higher carrier injection rate. Different arrangements of the interfaces between 1T and 1H phases were investigated through theoretical calculations[324, 325] and the structure formed by the connection of armchair edges of 1T and 1H phases has been determined as an energetically more favorable configuration. However, in these calculations the more stable metallic structure (1T_d), which arises from a small distortion of the 1T phase, was considered.

The present work aims to investigate the electronic transport properties of MoS₂ multi-phase lateral junctions when the more stable metallic phase of MoS₂ (i.e. 1T_d) acts as the contact and is compared with the 1T phase. Besides this, this work mainly focuses on the effect of doping on the electrical transport properties. In the results section, we first construct three junction models and calculate their transmission without external bias. Then we calculate the electronic properties for different levels of doping.

5.4.2 Computational details

Simulation program: VASP

Energy cut-off: 500 eV

Pseudopotentials: PBE-GGA(PAW)

k points (Monkhorst-Pack): 25×25×1 for 2D systems and 9×1×1 for lateral heterostructures

Vacuum: 15 Å

Energy and force convergence criterion: 10⁻⁵ eV and 10⁻² eV/Å, respectively

Transmission spectrum calculation Electronic transport across the 1T_d/1T-MoS₂ | 1H-MoS₂ interfaces is calculated using the self-consistent NEGF technique as implemented in TranSIESTA[326] which is interfaced with the SIESTA code.[327] Double-zeta (plus polarization) numerical orbital basis sets are used for all atoms. We employed norm-conserving pseudo-potentials[328], the GGA/PBE functional, and an energy cutoff for the real-space mesh of 250 Ry. In order to get accurate transmission spectra, the 2D Brillouin zone normal to the transport direction is sampled by meshes composed of 100 *k*-points in the periodic direction. While the SIESTA code uses a localized basis set and norm-conserving pseudopotentials, the calculated lattice parameters for different phases of MoS₂ agree well with those obtained from the VASP code.

5.4.3 Structures

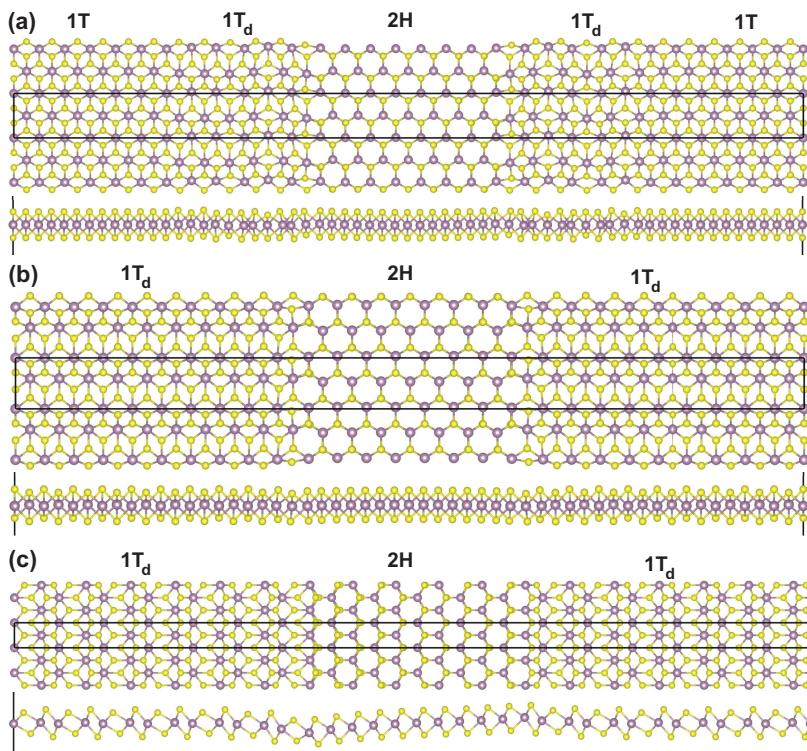


Fig. 5.27 Device models where the 2H phase of MoS₂ is sandwiched between the metallic MoS₂ electrodes: (a) the α -device, (b) the β -device, and (c) the γ -device. For the α and β devices, the interfaces between metallic and semiconducting MoS₂ have an armchair termination while a zigzag termination in the γ -device.

The use of metallic TMDCs as metal electrodes are expected to offer a breakthrough in the semiconductor industry as they have negligible heat dissipation and therefore are energy efficient. Among metallic TMDCs, metallic phases of MoS₂ (1T- and 1T_d-MoS₂) have attracted a growing interest due to their smooth interface with the semiconductor phase of MoS₂ (1H-MoS₂). However, the 1H phase is thermodynamically more stable than both 1T and 1T_d phases. Therefore, the stabilization of 1T and 1T_d over the 1H phase becomes an essential requirement for the successful experimental realization of configurable device structures such as 1T/T_d-MoS₂ | 1H-MoS₂. On the other hand, 1T MoS₂ is meta-stable and undergoes a Peierls transition to a lower-energy state 1T_d (or distorted 1T) and thus, metal contacts with the 1T_d structure are more stable than those with

the 1T phase. However, the MoS₂ 1T_d phase retransforms to the 1H phase at room temperature. As far as the relative stability is considered, choosing 1T_d as metal contact further stabilized the junction. Therefore, understanding the effect of different physical mechanisms on the stability of multiple phases (H, T, T_d) of this material is of vital importance to develop a proper control on phase transitions. To this end we mainly focus on the effect of doping (either with charge or atoms) on the stability, electronic and transport properties of 1T/T_d-MoS₂ |1H-MoS₂ interfaces. For the 1T and 1H hexagonal unit cells, the optimized in-plane lattice constant is obtained as 3.18 Å. On the other hand, the optimized lattice constants are $a=3.18$ Å and $b=5.72$ Å for the tetragonal 1T_d unit cell. These values are in good agreement with previous calculations[329]. It was previously discovered that the coexistence of the 1T_d phase with the other two phases indicates their experimental stability, yet it is also possible to relax the 1T_d phase to 1T phase using an external source, such as electron beam irradiation[319]. In experiment, 1T and 1T_d are indistinguishable, because the S atoms are the same in these two cases. Only the Mo atom form clusters that can not be differentiated in STM image.

In this work, we systematically investigate the electronic and transport properties of three different device architectures, called α , β , and γ , denoted in Fig. 5.27. In all device models, the semiconducting 1H-MoS₂ phase is sandwiched between two 1T_d metal electrodes to create Schottky contacts at the interfaces. In the α structure, the metallic part consists of both 1T and 1T_d-MoS₂ phases. The size of metallic and semiconducting parts are larger than 20 Å along the transport direction. The interface between the 1T_d-MoS₂ and 1H-MoS₂ phases have either an armchair termination, as in the case of the α and β structures, or a zigzag termination as in the case of the γ structure, in order to investigate the influence of the contact type on the calculated properties. We predict that the γ structure significantly deviates from a planar geometry after structural relaxation, see Fig. 5.27. To check whether such distortion is due to a calculation artefact, we started from a complete planar geometry and allowed both atomic coordinates and cell parameters to relax to their equilibrium values (or lowest energy configuration). We observed that the planar structure is not stable and structural relaxation brought back the original distorted structure. Indeed, such buckling or deviation from a planar structure is mainly restricted to the left in-

terface, in line with a recent work that proposed a new crystal structure model for MoS₂[329]. The observed buckling helps to reduce repulsive interaction between S atoms at the left interface, thereby enhancing the stability of this interface.

5.4.4 Transmission spectra and DOS

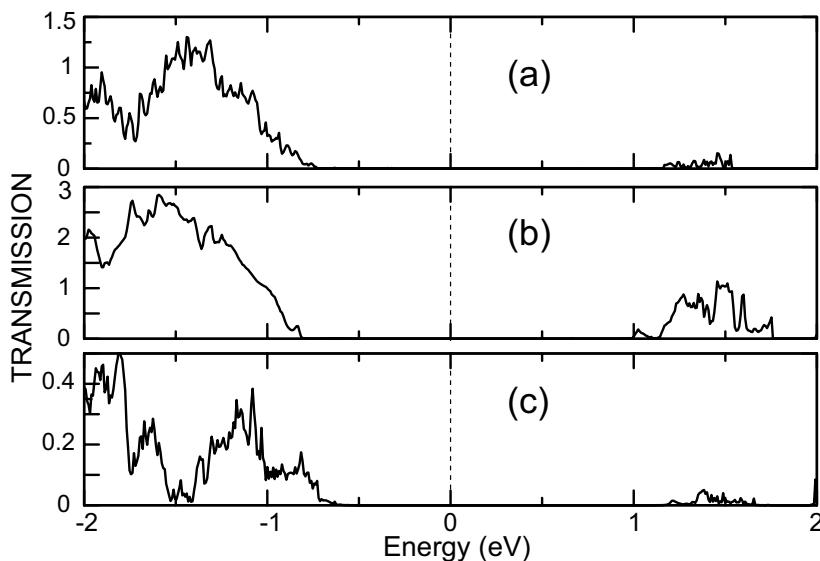


Fig. 5.28 The zero bias transmission spectra for (a) the α device, (b) the β device, and (c) the γ device.

The transmission spectra for all three device models at zero bias are depicted in Fig. 5.28. In these plots, the Schottky barrier for holes (electrons) is defined as the difference between Fermi level and the VBM(CBM) of the semiconductor 1H phase of MoS₂. The first clear observation is that there is a large barrier height at the pristine interfaces and there is no transmission within an energy range of 1.8 eV around the Fermi level, corresponding to the band gap of 1H-MoS₂. The Schottky barrier heights for the α , β and γ structures are predicted as 0.72, 0.80, and 0.63 eV for holes and 1.16, 0.99 and 1.19 eV for electrons, respectively. The estimated size of the scattering region along the transport direction is larger than 23 Å, which is much smaller than the mean free path of electrons in MoS₂[330] and therefore, the transport properties of these systems can be estimated with ballistic transport calculations. The β structure has the largest transmission over

the calculated energy range. The Mo atoms form a zigzag chain perpendicular to the interface (or along the transport direction) in the β and γ structures which enhances the electrical transport in these systems. However, the non-symmetric Mo zigzag chain lying parallel to the transport direction leads to scattering of electrons at the interface and gives rise to a lower transmission as compared to the α and β structures. Similar anisotropic electron transport has also been observed for ReS₂ where the resistance is the lowest along the Re cluster direction[331]. Comparing the α and β devices, the coexistence of 1T and 1T_d regions in the former device contributes to lowering the transmission due to additional scattering at the 1T/1T_d interface as compared to the latter device where we only have 1T_d phase in the electrode region.

5.4.5 The effect of doping

Next, we turn to the calculations of the electronic properties as a function of doping. The central part of 1H-MoS₂ is the least affected from the interface formation and determining the band gap and the position of the band edges with respect to the Fermi level. The calculated band gap value of 1.75 eV clearly indicates that the size of the 1H part is large enough to achieve the monolayer limit and eliminates the electrode-electrode interaction. In fact, the band gap of the pristine 1H-MoS₂ monolayer calculated with the same functional is around 1.7 eV. In line with the transport calculations, the Fermi level appears within the band gap of the central region of 1H-MoS₂. The calculated Schottky barriers are 0.75 eV for holes and 0.99 eV for electrons in the β structure. In the following discussion, we mainly focus on the β structure due to its better transport properties as compared to the α and γ devices. Other device models exhibit similar properties. Our results contradict experimental findings in the sense that, in experiments, it was shown that 1T (or 1T_d)|1H-MoS₂ interfaces exhibit a superior performance over the 3D metal-MoS₂ interfaces. However, we predict large Schottky barriers which give rise to a large contact resistance. In order to shed light on this contradiction, we calculate the electronic properties of the β structure as a function of electron doping. First of all, the electron doping stabilizes the 1T_d phase over the 1H-MoS₂ and prevents the structural phase transition to the semiconducting 1H-MoS₂ phase[332]. Also, the electron doping decreases

the Schottky barrier height for electrons at the interface, leading to the formation of an *n*-type Schottky barrier. This is attributed to the increase of the density of electrons in the *d*-orbital of the metallic $1T_d$ MoS₂ phase. Fig. 5.29 and Fig. 5.30 show the variation of the PDOS and Schottky barrier as a function of the electron concentration, respectively. We find that the Schottky barrier already diminishes for electron concentrations larger than 0.1 electron (per $1T_d$ MoS₂ formula unit). The Fermi level rises about 1 eV when only 0.28 electron is placed on the $1T_d$ part. Direct electron doping can be achieved by using electron beams in experiments or Li/Na adsorption on the metallic phase[332, 333]. Here, the considered alkali atoms donate electrons to the $1T_d$ phase and enhance the stability and electronic properties of the metallic part[332]. In addition, absorption of hydrogen atoms on the $1T$ part of MoS₂ has been shown to reduce the barrier at the interface of $1T$ -MoS₂ | $1H$ -MoS₂[334, 335].

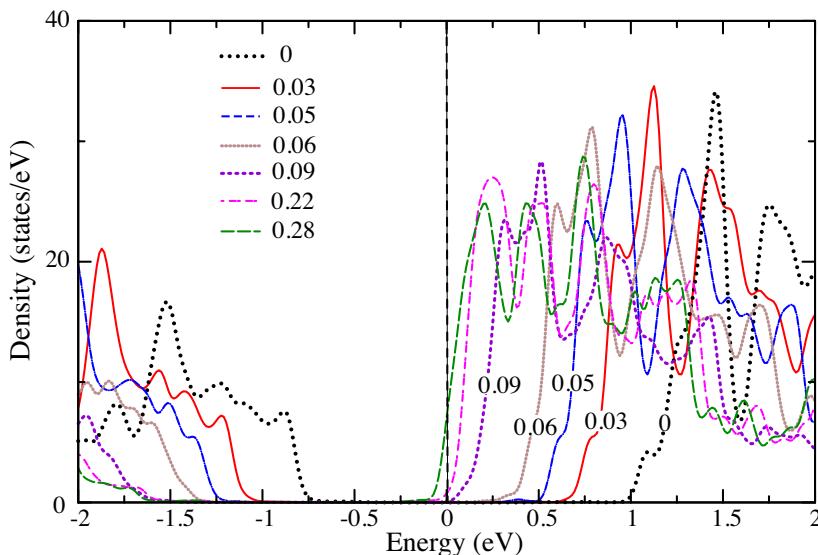


Fig. 5.29 pDOS of the valence and conduction band of $1H$ -MoS₂ as a function of electron concentration for the β -device. Here, we only show the PDOS of the central part of $1H$ -MoS₂ where the effect of the interface is minimal. The Fermi level marks the zero energy. Electron concentrations (per formula unit of $1T_d$ phase) are given.

Another possible strategy to enhance the stability of metallic phases and electrical conduction at the metal-semiconductor MoS₂ interface is to dope the metallic phase with transition metal atoms. Most of the well known TMDCs are

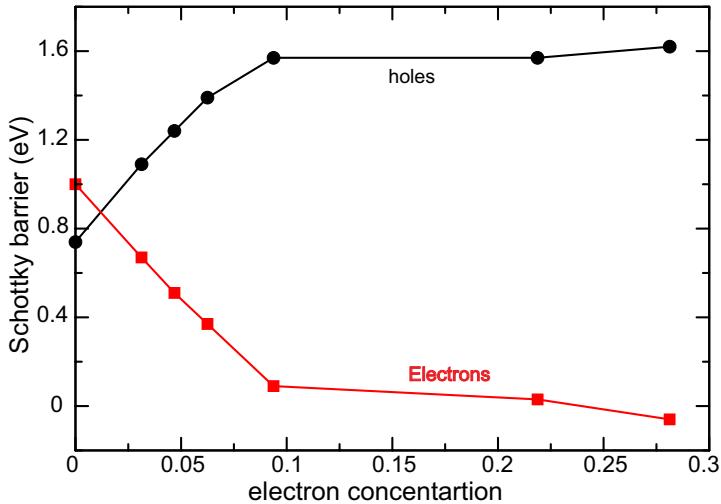


Fig. 5.30 Variation of Schottky barrier for the β -device as a function of electron concentration (per formula unit of 1T_d part) for both electrons (red) and holes (black).

either in the 1H or 1T phase when in their ground state. However, the single layer ReS₂ has neither H nor T as ground state, but is stabilized in 1T_d structure[336, 337]. Therefore, alloying MoS₂ with Re may stabilize the 1T_d structure of MoS₂ and leads to *n*-type doping of the crystal as similarly proposed by Raffone et al. [338] for Sn doped 1T phase. Meanwhile, we have previously shown that doping of ReS₂ with Mo results in a *p*-type doping of a ReS₂ monolayer[337]. Therefore, we investigate the effect of substitutional doping of Re at Mo sites of 1T_d-MoS₂ on the transport properties. Here, we also consider the group VB element Ta since the pristine TaS₂ monolayer crystallizes in the 1T phase and results in a *p*-type doped 1T_d MoS₂ structure. Indeed, in a recent work, it was shown that the distorted phase of MoS₂ becomes energetically stable over 1H phase when the Re concentration exceeds 50%[339]. In this work, we did not consider such large dopant concentrations for two reasons. First of all, the lattice mismatch between 1H-MoS₂ and doped 1T-MoS₂ phases can be kept minimal for small dopant concentrations. At large concentrations, the relaxation of the cell parameters leads to artificial enlargement of the lattice parameters of 1H-MoS₂. Secondly, Re doped 1T_d-MoS₂ becomes a semiconductor. To show the effect of doping, we only considered concentrations smaller than 20%. In this work, we assumed that doping of 1T-MoS₂ with Re or Ta may avoid the structural

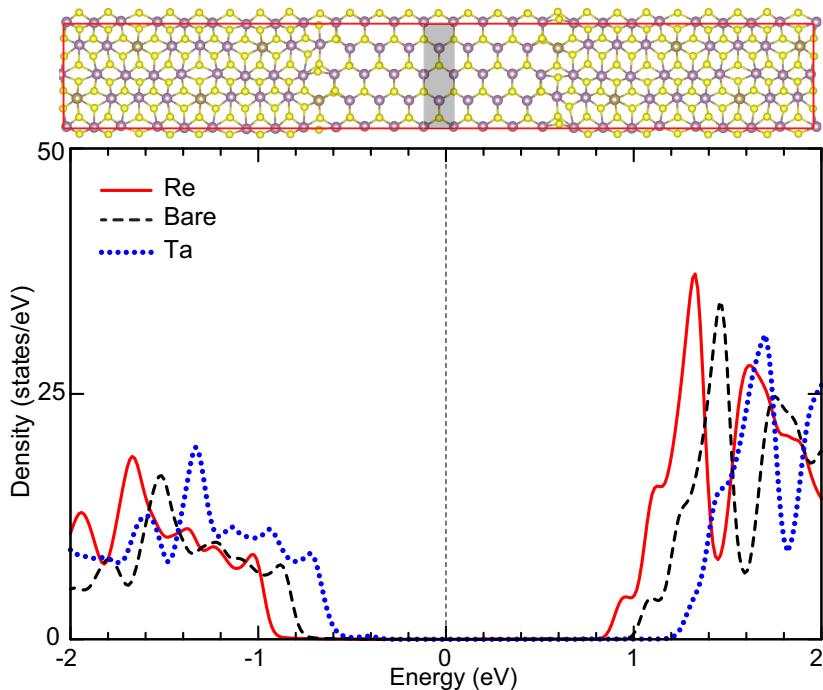


Fig. 5.31 pDOS of the valence and conduction band of the central part of 1H-MoS₂ for Re and Ta doped devices. In the top figure, gray region highlights the central part of 1H phase for which PDOS is calculated. For comparison, PDOS of bare device is also shown.

transition to 1H phase due to, for instance, temperature effects. Fig. 5.31 shows the PDOS for the central part of 1H-MoS₂ for Re and Ta doped β structure. In the case of Re doping, the Fermi level approaches the conduction band of 1H-MoS₂, accompanied by a significant decrease in *n*-type Schottky barrier height. On the other hand Ta doping reduces the *p*-type Schottky barrier height as expected. For a concentration of 14% (per electrode), the *n*-type Schottky barrier becomes 0.85 eV for Re and the *p*-type Schottky barrier becomes 0.58 eV for Ta.

Since Re and Ta doping give rise to different electronic properties, we can design metal-semiconductor junctions with different type of Schottky barrier heights (i.e. *n*- and *-p* type) in the same device geometry. This allows us to design optical and photovoltaic applications. While a Re doped junction effectively blocks holes Ta doped junction hampers the easy passage of electrons across the junction. In this device geometry, we can separate photo-generated charge carriers for instance. Fig. 5.32 shows the device model and pDOS as a function

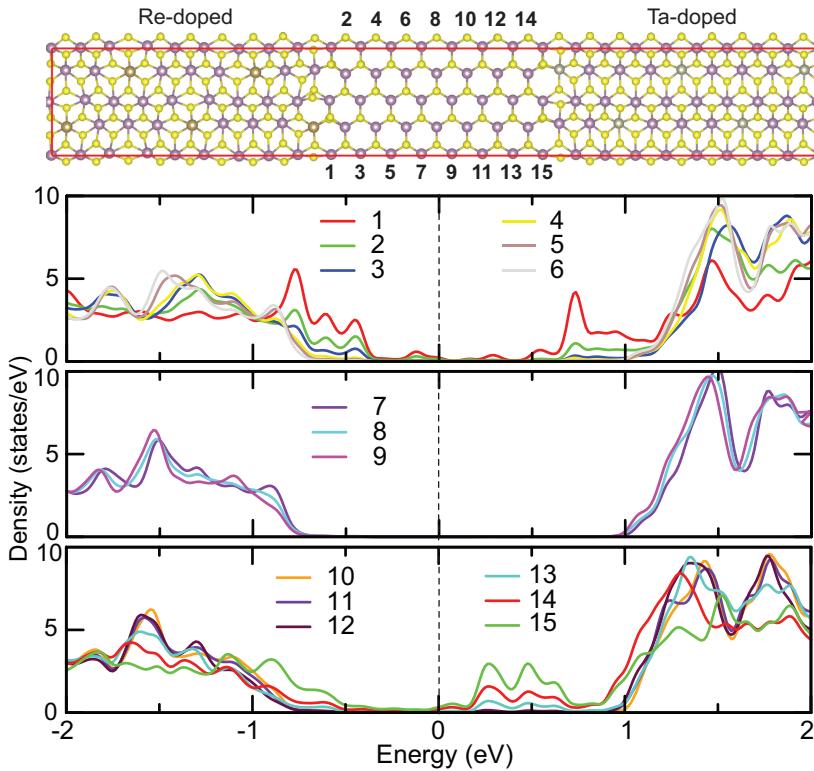


Fig. 5.32 pDOS of 1H-MoS₂ at the different position on 1H-MoS₂. The Fermi level marks the zero energy.

of position in 1H-MoS₂. While the left electrode is doped with Re, the right electrode is alloyed with Ta. The central part of 1H-MoS₂ clearly has a PDOS similar to free-standing 1H-MoS₂ monolayers with a band gap of 1.75 eV. However, we have different electronic properties in the right and left side of the central region. Due to Re (Ta) doping, the left (right) part has a *n* (*p*)-type Schottky barrier. The presence of 1T_d-1H MoS₂ interfaces develops mid-gap states that mainly come from the atoms in the boundary region. The electronic properties gradually change from metallic to semiconducting when moving away from the interfaces. For the atoms far away from the interface region (i.e. central region of 1H-MoS₂), we observe a clear band gap which is close to that of pristine 1H-MoS₂. While the mid-gap states appear below the Fermi level at the left interface (Re-doped side), they are unoccupied and reside above the Fermi level at the right interface (Ta-doped side). About 3.2 Å from the interface, the mid-gap states start to disappear.

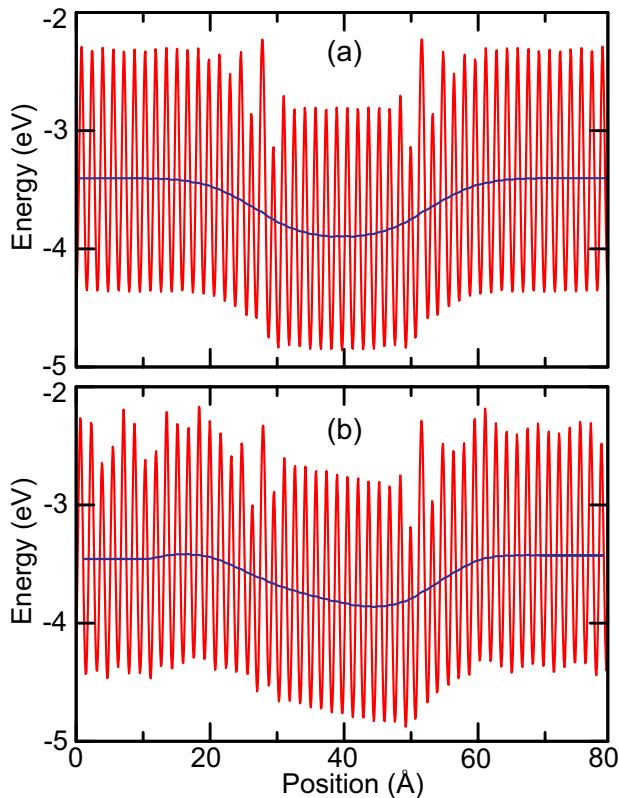


Fig. 5.33 Self-consistent EP profile along the interface of armchair (a) pristine and (b) doped $1T_d$ -1H- $1T_d$ MoS_2 heterostructure. The right (left) $1T_d$ MoS_2 is doped with Re (Ta). Blue curve denotes the plane average potential along the heterostructure.

[Fig. 5.33](#) shows the EP along the heterojunction. We consider both pristine and doped β -devices. For an undoped heterojunction, the average potential is symmetric at the left and right interfaces. However, doped heterojunctions have a different EP, especially, within 1H- MoS_2 . Due to its valence configuration, Re (Ta) acts as a donor (an acceptor). This is reflected in the average effective potential shown in [Fig. 5.33\(b\)](#). The average EP does not have a sharp variation at the $1T_d$ -1H interface, extending along the 2-3 atomic rows. This is due to the fact that we form interfaces between two different crystal structures of MoS_2 (i.e $1T_d$ and 1H). The EP converges to the same value at the left and right electrodes. If one considers a photovoltaic device using the β structure co-doped with Re and Ta, an electron-hole pair is generated after absorbing a photon in the 1H part. the Re-doped interface has a higher potential as compared to the Ta-doped in-

terface, producing a driving force for dissociation of the electron-hole pair. The electron flows along the potential decline (i.e. towards Ta-doped electrode) and the hole in the opposite direction (i.e. towards Re-doped electrode). In this way, a photocurrent can be generated by the photovoltaic effect. Thus, by proper control of doping and interface roughness, we can control the quantum efficiency of electron-hole dissociation[340].

5.4.6 Summary

In this work, we explored the impact of doping on the electronic and charge transport properties across $1T_d$ - $1H$ MoS_2 interfaces by considering various device models. Doping and alloying (with charge, atoms or molecules) appear to be the effective methods to tailor and improve the physical-chemical properties and stability of not only $1T/1T_d$ phases of MoS_2 but also other 2D materials. The interface structure between $1T_d$ and $1H$ phases is one of the decisive factors in the determination of the electrical transport across the heterojunction. We found that the Schottky barrier height of electrons for pristine heterojunctions can even disappear as a result of electron doping. While charge doping only reduces the Schottky barrier for electrons, co-doping is able to tune the barriers for hole and electrons at the same time.

5.5 Defect induction: Faceted blue phosphorene nanotube formed by line defects⁵

5.5.1 Introduction

Previously we have introduced phosphorene as a new member of 2D materials family. In contrast to the C atoms of graphene, the P atoms in phosphorene have sp^3 -hybridization. This is mainly caused by the extra valence electron of phosphorus in comparison to carbon. Indeed, if these extra electrons are placed in a sp^2 -hybridized structure, they would occupy the energetically unfavourable (antibonding) π^* band. However, with sp^3 -hybridization, a σ -bond network can be formed with three sp^3 orbitals and the other sp^3 orbital is used to host the

⁵This work is published: P4.

remaining electron pair. This leads to an essentially tetragonal coordination of the P atoms and results in a buckled nature of sp^3 -hybridized sheets. The out-of-plane positions of the atoms in sp^3 -hybridized sheets give rise to various possible structural phases which are absent in sp^2 -hybridized systems. In the case of phosphorene, this extra freedom leads to a plethora of structural phases[142, 143] of which black (α -phase) and blue (β -phase) phosphorene (see Fig. 5.34) are the most stable ones.

Most 2D crystals, such as graphene and boron nitride, can also be used to create nanotubes by rolling up the sheets. Due to the buckled nature of the phosphorene family, the traditionally rolled-up nanotubes can be modified in various ways. As shown by Guan *et al.*[142], it is possible to join different structural phases of phosphorene to create so-called faceted nanotubes with lower formation energies than simple rolled nanotubes. These faceted tubes are made up of different phases that form well-defined angles when they are joined together. When a suitable combination of such structural phases is used, the structure can be closed to form a tube without inducing bending strain as in rolled nanotubes.

In the present work, we have taken a different approach to reduce the formation energy of PNT. We start from (single-phase) blue phosphorene sheets and introduce various defect lines to induce kinks with well-defined angles in the system. Combining the defect lines in appropriate ways leads to faceted blue PNT with low formation energies. The advantage of this approach is that the energetically unfavorable phases are kept to a minimum. Here, we investigate the stability and electronic properties of these faceted tubes and compare them to the traditional rolled tubes and to the faceted multiphase tubes.

This work is organized as follows: First we study rolled blue PNTs. Then we introduce various defect lines and calculate the corresponding formation energies and the angles of the resulting kinks. We use this information to create energetically interesting faceted PNTs in the next section. Finally, we investigate the electronic properties of the obtained structures and summarize our results.

5.5.2 Computational details

Simulation program: VASP

Energy cut-off: 500 eV

Pseudopotentials: PBE-GGA(PAW)

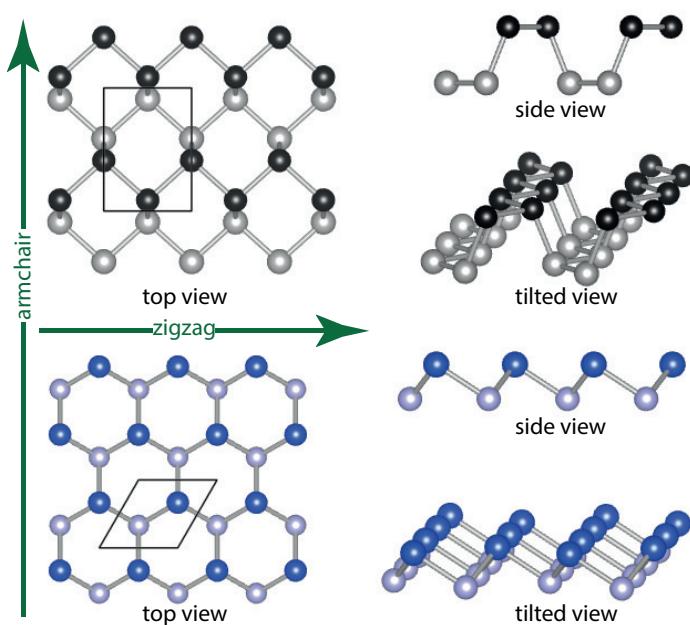


Fig. 5.34 Monolayer structures of black (first row) and blue (second row) phosphorenes. Atoms are colored according to the names of the allotropes, and are lighter in color for the bottom layer of the buckled structure. The black boxes indicate the unit cell of each structure.

k points (Monkhorst-Pack): $15 \times 15 \times 1$ for 2D systems and $1 \times 1 \times 15$ for nanotubes

Vacuum: 15 \AA

Energy and force convergence criterion: 10^{-5} eV and 10^{-3} eV/\AA , respectively

5.5.3 Rolled PNT

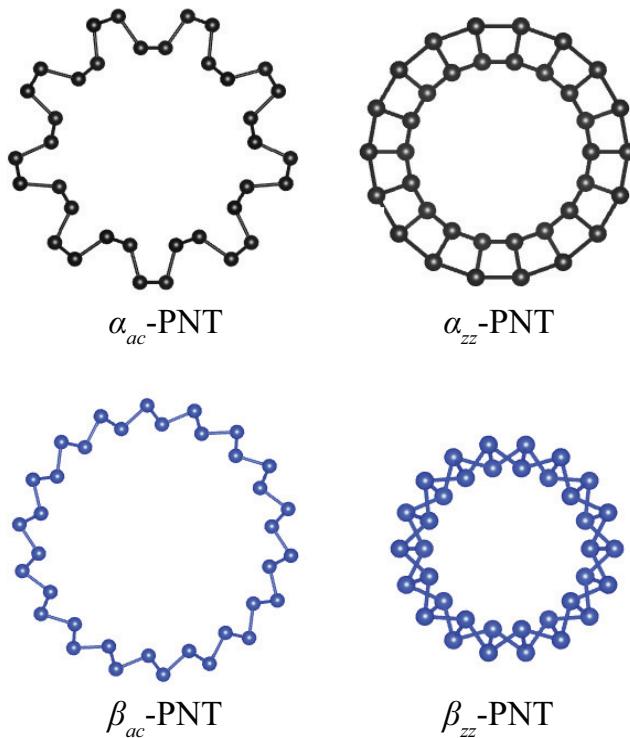


Fig. 5.35 Rolled structures of α -PNT and β -PNT seen from the axial direction. The subscripts indicate the directions of the chiral vector, i.e. ac for armchair and zz for zigzag.

As a reference, we first investigate the rolled α -PNT and β -PNT that result from rolling up black and blue phosphorene sheets, respectively. A cross section of the structure of some typical examples is shown in Fig. 5.35. In principle, there is an infinite number of possible tubes but we restrict our study to the chiral tubes rolled up along the armchair and zigzag directions. Such PNTs were also studied previously[142, 341] and our results compare well with those recent calculations as shown below. For large tubes, the formation energy of the tubes can be mainly attributed to the strain energy that results from bending the

phosphorene sheets. It has been demonstrated with a simple continuum elastic model that the bending energy follows a R^{-2} dependence, in which R denotes the radius of the nanotube[342, 343]. Deviations from this ideal behavior can be expected for small tubes where the finite thickness of the phosphorene sheet and the interatomic interactions between non-nearest neighbours become important.

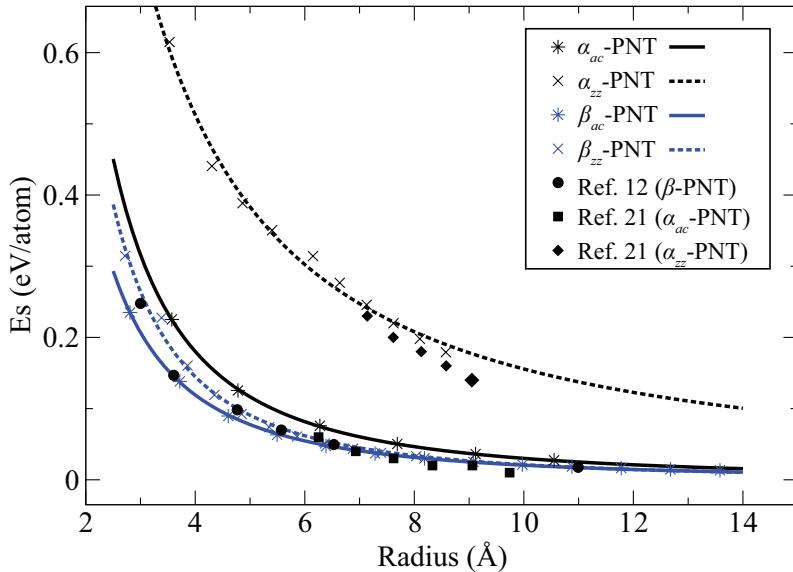


Fig. 5.36 Strain energy versus radius of rolled nanotubes. The curves correspond to aR^{-b} fits, where the fitting parameters are listed in [table 5.8](#).

We calculated the strain energy for armchair and zigzag nanotubes of α -PNT and β -PNT as a function of their radii and show the results in [Fig. 5.36](#) together with the results of Ref. [142] and Ref. [341]. The strain energy is here defined as the energy difference per P atom between the rolled PNT and a corresponding phosphorene sheet, i.e. $E_S^x = (E_{\text{PNT}}^x - E_{\text{sheet}}^x)/N$, in which N denotes the number of atoms and $x = \alpha, \beta$. Since the strain energy of ideal nanotubes follows a R^{-2} law, we try to fit data by a power law of the form $E_S = aR^{-b}$. In [table 5.8](#), we show the coefficients of this fitting function for all the different nanotubes. It is clear that the strain energy of the rolled PNT approximately follows the inverse-square law based on the bending energy. Note, however, that a substantial deviation from this trend is observed for zigzag nanotubes made of black phosphorene. This can be attributed to the large buckling in the transverse

direction which effectively increases the thickness of the bended sheet. Another interesting observation is that the blue phosphorene phase becomes more stable than black phosphorene for small nanotubes: The cohesive energy of 2D black phosphorene sheets is about 10 meV/atom larger than that of blue phosphorene[142] and this is easily compensated by the reduced bending energy of blue phosphorene.

Table 5.8 Fitting coefficients for the strain energy $E_S = aR^{-b}$ of rolled PNTs shown in Fig. 5.36.

	α_{zz} -PNT	α_{ac} -PNT	β_{zz} -PNT	β_{ac} -PNT
a	3.11	2.70	2.63	1.70
b	1.30	1.95	2.09	1.92

The strain energy of all the round nanotubes increases rapidly as the tube radius decreases. At some point the strain energy might become so large that it is more favorable to alter the structure in order to release some of the built-up energy. As discussed in the introduction, Guan *et al.*[142] showed that specific partial structural phase transitions can lead to substantial energy gains. As a result, the PNTs loose their round character and acquire a faceted appearance. The different facets of the tube consist of nearly flat phosphorene nanoribbons with well-defined structural phases that are glued together at almost no expense. The structural phase transitions raise the energy, but this is more than compensated by the reduced strain energy for small PNTs.

5.5.4 Defect lines

Here, we take another approach to release the strain energy. In contrast to the faceted tubes of Guan *et al.*[142] that contain considerable large parts with unfavorable structural phases, we try to maximize the amount of the low-energy blue phosphorene (β phase) in the nanotubes. This can be done by the introduction of defect lines that create kinks in the phosphorene sheet. We will use the β phase for this purpose for two different reasons: (i) as discussed above, the β phase has lower energy for small tubes, and (ii) it is easier to introduce defect lines in the β phase than in the α phase (black phosphorene). The β phase consists of P atoms that are alternately shifted up and down with respect

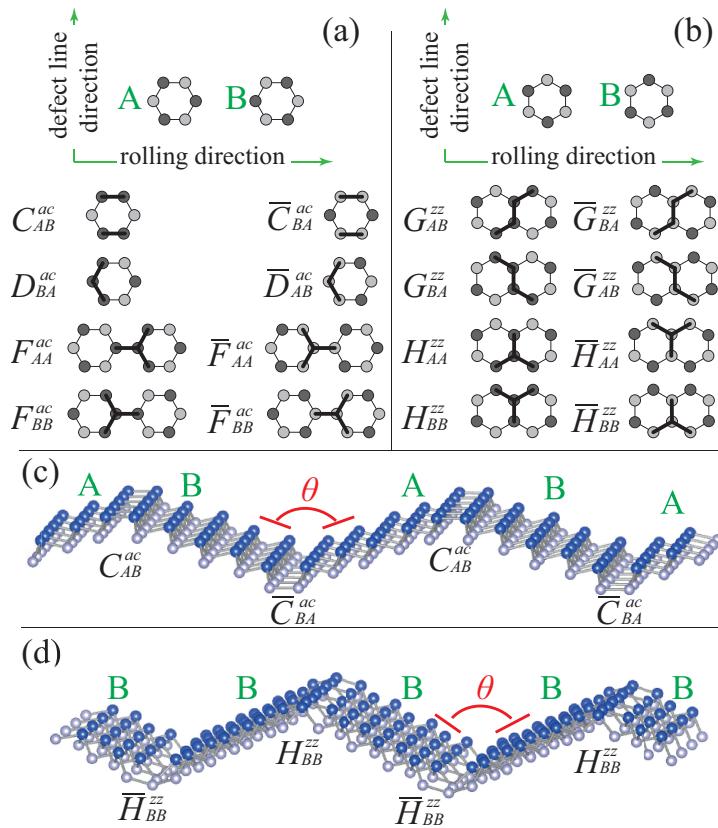


Fig. 5.37 Different types of defect for (a) armchair and (b) zigzag directions. The dark and light shaded atoms indicate that they are buckled up or down, respectively. Effective location of the defect is represented by a thick black line. Overlined defect name refer to the same defect but with an opposite opening direction of the angle. (c) and (d) are tilted view of the C and H defect lines incorporated in the β phase.

to the crystal plane (i.e. one sublattice (A) buckles up, while the other (B) buckles down). Defect lines are created by breaking this ordered pattern along 1D lines, which can be done in several ways. We restrict our study to lines in the zigzag and armchair directions in order to create armchair and zigzag nanotubes, respectively. Three types of defect lines, C , D , and F , in the zigzag direction are considered and two, G and H , in the armchair direction. The structure of these defect lines is depicted in Fig. 5.37 and we give their formation energies in table 5.9. The defect lines induce kinks in the phosphorene sheets and the angle of these kinks is also given in table 5.9. The formation energy of a defect line

is defined as $E_f^I = (E_{\text{defect}} - E_{\text{sheet}})/L$ in which L is the length of the defect line. Practically, this property can be calculated in a system that combines two defects of the same kind but with opposite orientation (i.e. angle) in a periodic structure, as illustrated in Fig. 5.37. The following nomenclature will be applied in order to distinguish between the different defects: superscripts (*ac* or *zz*) are used to indicate the type of tubes that are produced by the defects (armchair or zigzag); and subscripts (*AA*, *AB*, *BA*, and *BB*) correspond to the buckling on the two sides of the defect line, *A* (*B*) meaning sublattice *A* up and *B* down (*B* up and *A* down).

Table 5.9 The formation energy E_f^I , and the kink angle θ of the different defect lines that are illustrated in Fig. 5.37.

	C^{ac}	D^{ac}	F^{ac}	G^{zz}	H^{zz}
E_f^I (eV/Å)	0.05	-0.003	0.08	0.09	0.19
θ (°)	139.7	112.4	89.5	118.5	126.7
E_{gap} (eV)	1.56	1.64	1.43	1.28	1.20

Note that one can distinguish two kinds of defects: (i) defects that leave the β phase unaltered on both sides of the defect line and (ii) those defects that invert the buckling orientation on one side with respect to the other. $F_{AA/BB}^{ac}$ and $H_{AA/BB}^{zz}$ belong to the first type, while C_{AB}^{ac} , D_{BA}^{ac} , and $G_{AB/BA}^{zz}$ belong to the second type.

5.5.5 Defect-induced faceted PNTs

The different defect lines discussed above can now be combined to create defect-induced faceted PNTs (DIF-PNTs). According to the type, the formation energy, and the preferred angles of the defects, we can make intuitive guesses about which defect combinations are possible and energetically favorable. Some examples of DIF-PNTs are pictured in Fig. 5.38.

Not all defect combinations are possible or favorable and we therefore used the following guidelines to make potentially interesting tubes: (i) An even number of defects that invert the buckling (i.e. the second type of defects discussed in previous section) must be included to make closed nanotubes. (ii) The total number of defects should be as small as possible because every defect line has

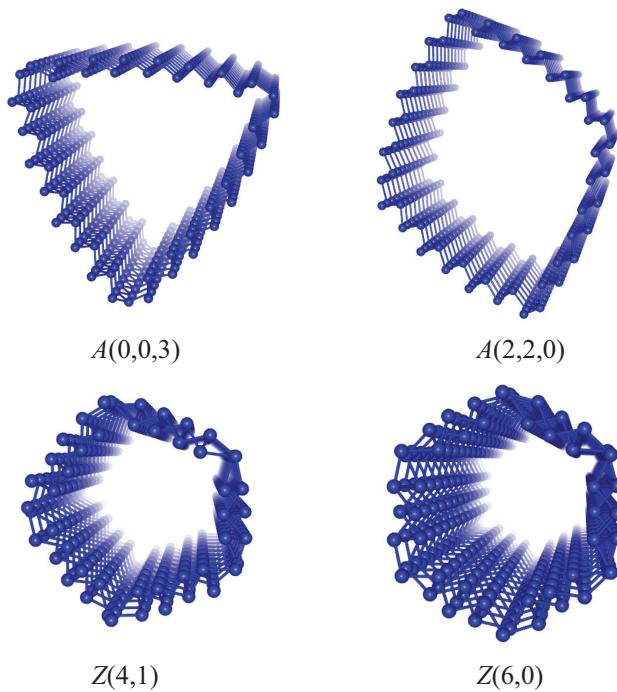


Fig. 5.38 Selected examples of defect-induced faceted PNTs

a finite formation energy. (iii) For a nanotube with N defects, the sum of the defect angles should be close to $(N - 2) \times 180^\circ$ in order to avoid straining the angles too much.

To compare the DIF-PNTs with round tubes, we need to define some radius for the faceted tubes. To this end, we use the radius of a rolled tube with the same orientation and number of P atoms as the DIF-PNT. The radius of the DIF-PNTs is not only determined by the present defect lines, but also by the size of the defect-free β -phase regions which can also be varied. The formation energy of the DIF-PNT is defined as $E_f^t = (E_{\text{DIF-PNT}} - E_{\text{sheet}})/N$, where N is the number of atoms. When the angles are perfectly matched in some ideal faceted tube, the formation energy of the tube is expected to decrease as R^{-1} instead of the R^{-2} dependence of round tubes. This R^{-1} dependence simply follows from the fact that the formation energy of the defects is (nearly) independent of the radius, while the number of atoms increases linearly with the size of the radius of the tube. The different behavior of the formation energies of (ideal) faceted and

round nanotubes as a function of radius implies that there will be a crossover radius R_0 such that faceted tubes with $R < R_0$ are more stable than round ones.

We will first take a look at armchair PNTs and consider zigzag PNTs in the next section.

armchair PNTs For armchair nanotubes, we need defect lines along the zigzag direction. We discussed three of such defects above and we will combine them to make energetically favorable armchair DIF-PNTs. The first two defects, C_{AB}^{ac} and D_{BA}^{ac} , have opposite effects on the buckling of the P atoms and should always appear in pairs in order to match the buckling at the two edges of the nanoribbon. The third defect, $F_{AA/BB}^{ac}$, can be regarded as a combination of the first two and can always be added to an existing tube. In order to distinguish the different defected nanotubes we introduce the notation $A(m, m, n)$ to indicate an armchair (A) DIF-PNT with m defects of the first and second kind and n of the third. To keep the strain on the defect angles low, we need at least three defects (triangular tube).

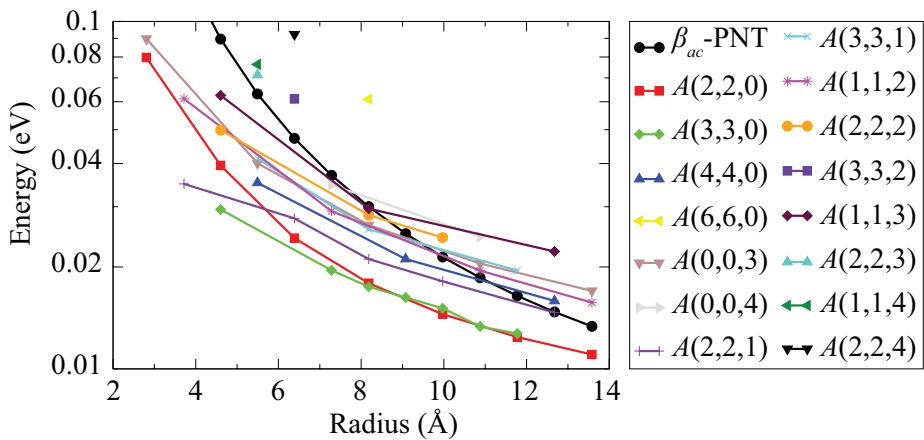


Fig. 5.39 The formation energy E_f^t of armchair DIF-PNTs compared with the strain energy E_S^β of β_{ac} -PNT (black curve with circle symbols).

The only possibilities for such tubes are $A(1, 1, 1)$ and $A(0, 0, 3)$. The strain on the first one is considerable and this kind of tube is therefore not considered. Quadrilateral tubes can be made from the following combinations: $A(2, 2, 0)$, $A(1, 1, 2)$, and $A(0, 0, 4)$. Pentagons and hexagons can be formed with $A(2, 2, 1)$, $A(1, 1, 3)$, $A(0, 0, 5)$, $A(3, 3, 0)$, $A(2, 2, 2)$, $A(1, 1, 4)$, and $A(0, 0, 6)$. The 3th and

7th type of tubes are not considered because of the excessive incorporation of the most energetically unfavorable F^{ac} defects. Adding more defect lines becomes unfavorable because in this case large tubes are required to incorporate such number of defects. Therefore, we only investigate the smallest possible nanotubes as typical examples and do not consider their behavior as a function of the tube radius.

In Fig. 5.39, the formation energy of the different armchair PNTs is shown as a function of tube radius for both faceted and round tubes. The crossover in the formation energy between the faceted and round tubes is nicely observed for several faceted nanotubes such as $A(0, 0, 3)$. The point where the crossover occurs depends on the type and number of defects and ranges from approximately 7 to more than 15 Å. The most favorable armchair DIF-PNTs are the quadrilateral $A(2,2,0)$ and the hexagonal $A(3,3,0)$ nanotubes with a slight preference for the latter. Due to their larger formation energy, F^{zz} defects are rarely included in the energetically favorable armchair DIF-PNTs.

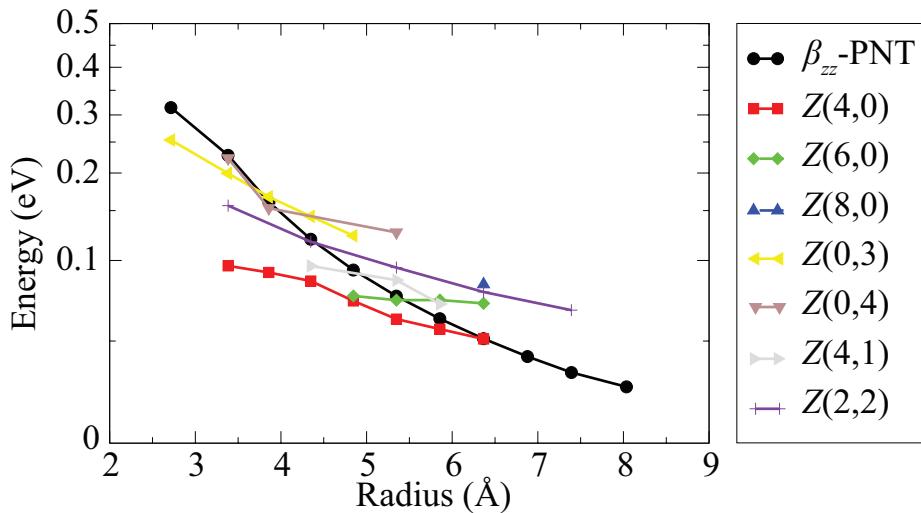


Fig. 5.40 The formation energy E_f^t of zigzag DIF-PNTs compared with the strain energy E_S^β of β_{zz} -PNT (black curve with circle symbols).

zigzag PNTs For zigzag nanotubes, only two kinds of defect lines are included to make faceted tubes, namely G^{zz} and H^{zz} . We use the notation $Z(m, n)$ to indicate a zigzag (Z) DIF-PNT with m defects of the first and n of the second

kind, see Fig. 5.38 for examples. The total number of G^{zz} defects should be even, while the number of H^{zz} defects is arbitrary. Again, we need at least three defect lines and the only possibility is $Z(0, 3)$ in this case. Quadrilateral tubes can be made from $Z(4, 0)$, $Z(2, 2)$, and $Z(0, 4)$. Other tubes that we considered are $Z(4, 1)$, $Z(6, 0)$, and $Z(8, 0)$.

In Fig. 5.40, the formation energy of the different zigzag PNTs is shown as a function of tube radius for both faceted and round tubes. It is seen that the crossover in the formation energy between the faceted and round tubes also occurs for the zigzag nanotube, but at much smaller radii as compared to the armchair nanotubes (from approximately 4 to 6.5 Å). The quadrilateral $Z(4,0)$ tubes are found to be the most stable zigzag DIF-PNTs.

Table 5.10 Fitting coefficients for the formation energy $E_f^t = aR^{-b}$ of DIF-PNTs.

Direction	β_{ac} -PNT	$A(2, 2, 0)$	$A(3, 3, 0)$	$A(0, 0, 3)$	$A(0, 0, 4)$	$A(2, 2, 1)$	$A(3, 3, 1)$
a	1.70	0.33	0.12	0.28	0.19	0.16	0.24
b	1.92	1.37	0.89	1.12	0.86	0.93	1.04

Direction	β_{zz} -PNT	$Z(4, 0)$	$Z(6, 0)$	$Z(0, 3)$	$Z(0, 4)$	$Z(4, 1)$
a	2.63	0.61	0.30	0.87	0.34	3.70
b	2.09	1.36	0.88	1.23	0.59	2.25

It is interesting to examine the formation energy of the faceted armchair and zigzag PNTs in more detail. We can fit the formation energy of the different tubes with the function $E_f^t = aR^{-b}$. This function has the same form as the strain energy (E_S) defined in subsection 5.5.4, but it now includes both strain energy and defect energy. A b parameter close to 2 indicates that the strain energy dominates in the system, while $b \approx 1$ is expected for non-strained defected tubes. In table 5.10, we give the fitting parameters as obtained for some typical types of DIF-PNT. The round tubes (β_{ac} -PNT and β_{zz} -PNT) have indeed parameters close to 2 and the defected tubes have fitting parameters close to 1, although there are some substantial deviations in the case of faceted zigzag nanotubes because of the limited number of data points and the smallness of the tubes.

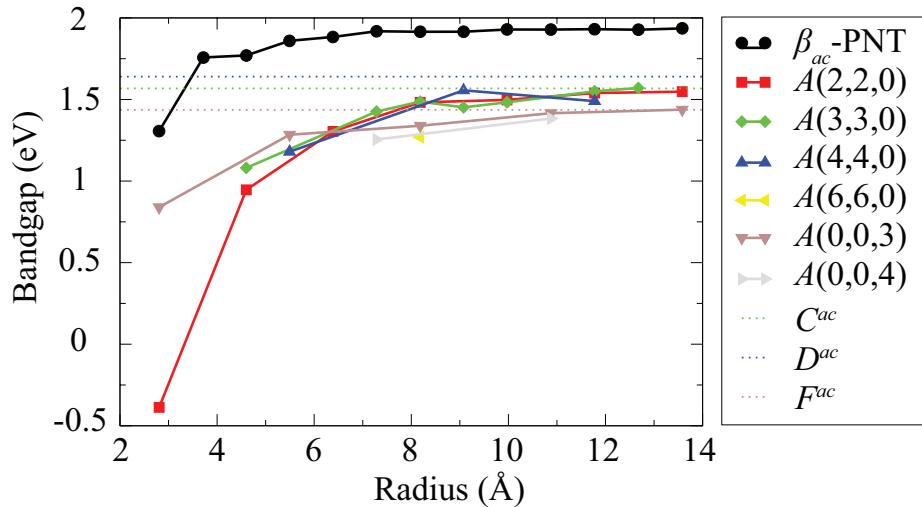


Fig. 5.41 Armchair DIF-PNTs band gaps compared with rolled β_{ac} -PNT (black curve with circle symbols).

5.5.6 Electronic properties

In the next section, we will investigate the electronic properties of the DIF-PNTs with a focus on the electronic band gap. In contrast to the inverse proportionality of the band gap with diameter in carbon nanotubes[344], the band gap of round PNTs increases with the size of the radius . For multiphase faceted PNTs, it was shown previously that the band gap does not show any clear dependence on the radius but rather spans the range between the composing structural phases[142].

In Fig. 5.41 we show the band gaps of the armchair DIF-PNTs together with the results for the rolled β_{ac} -PNT. A clear dependence of the band gap on the radius can be observed. The band gap increases with radius and converges to two different limits, well below the limit of the round tubes. The origin of this behavior lies in the character of the VBM and CBM states of the DIF-PNTs which determine the size of the band gap. As illustrated in the insets of Fig. 5.42, the VBM and CBM states are localized on the defect lines. In other words, the defect levels associated with the defect lines fall inside the blue phosphorene gap and determine the band gap of the defect-induced faceted PNTs. This is confirmed by the pDOS in Fig. 5.42, where a clear defect peak in the PDOS can be found inside the band gap of pure (inter-defect) blue phosphorene. Therefore,

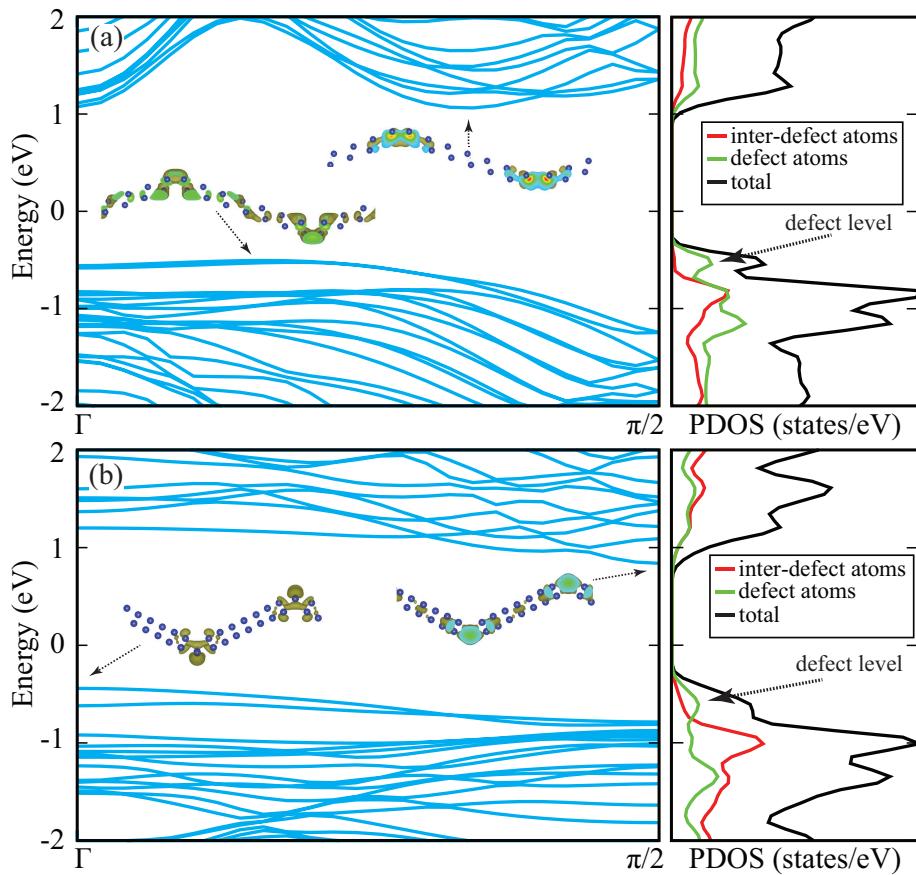


Fig. 5.42 Band structure (along defect line) and PDOS of selected DIF-PNTs, (a) for C^{av} and (b) for G^{zz} . Insets: Charge density at CBM and VBM.

the electronic band gap will not converge to the blue phosphorene limit, but rather to the gap size of the isolated defects as calculated in subsection 5.5.4 (table 5.9). The tubes contain various types of defects, but the defect with the smallest gap determines the total band gap of the tube. The decreased band gaps for smaller tubes can be attributed to inter-defect interactions and possibly to some remaining bending stresses. The decrease in the band gap when the distance between the defect lines decreases was also observed for the defected phosphorene sheets, illustrated in Fig. 5.37, in which no bending strain was present.

The dependence of the band gap on the radius of the zigzag DIF-PNTs is shown in Fig. 5.43. As for the zigzag DIF-PNTs, the band gaps converge to that of the isolated defects for large radii. When compared to armchair DIF-PNTs, a

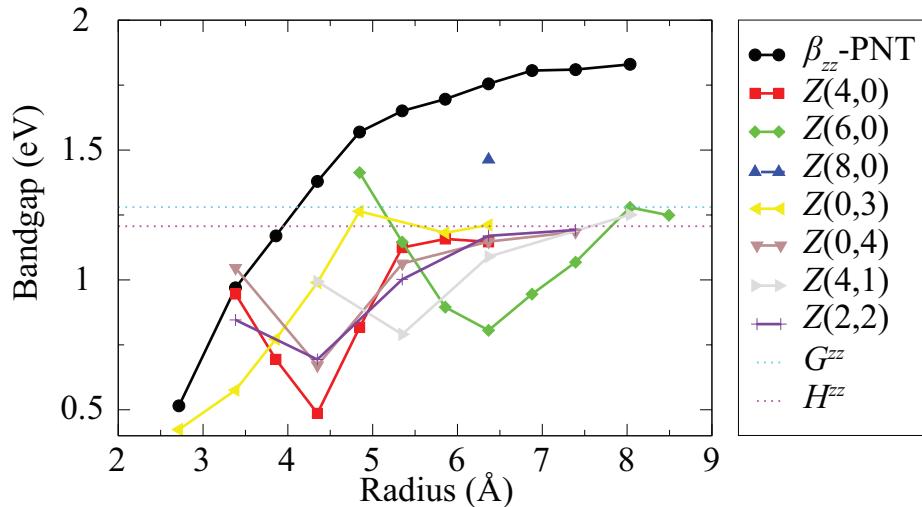


Fig. 5.43 Zigzag DIF-PNTs band gaps compared with rolled β_{zz} -PNT (black curve with circle symbols).

different behavior can be observed for tubes with small radii: with decreasing radius the band gap first decreases, but then it increases again for very small radii. The first decrease can be attributed to the interaction between the different defect states. The increase of the band gap for very small radii might be attributed to the structural interaction between the defects: the defects of the zigzag nanotubes are wider (i.e. they distort the blue phosphorene phase over a wider range) than the armchair ones and become structurally distorted when the distance between them becomes smaller.

5.5.7 Comparison to multiphase faceted PNT

In the last part of this work, we will compare our results of DIF-PNTs to the multiphase faceted PNTs proposed by Guan et al. [142]. These last tubes are made of fixed combinations of α , β , γ , and δ -phase phosphorene with variable widths, as depicted in Fig. 1 of Ref. [142]. Our most favorable armchair DIF-PNTs, namely the A(3,3,0) tubes, are closely related to some of the tubes of Guan *et al.* and have similar symmetry and formation energies. The (nearly) equally stable quadrilateral A(2,2,0) tubes, on the other hand, fall outside their description due to the different number of facets. The DIF-PNTs are not restricted to the triangular sym-

metry of the multiphase PNTs and allow therefore for a much larger variety of possible low-energy nanotubes.

For zigzag PNTs the differences are even larger. Our zigzag DIF-PNTs have no analogues in the multiphase description because the multiphase zigzag PNTs are exclusively built from the energetically less favorable γ and δ phases. The multiphase description provides only one structure with lower formation energy than rolled β -PNT (see Fig. 3(a) of Ref. [142]), in contrast to the multitude of zigzag DIF-PNTs with lower formation energies that we found (see [Fig. 5.40](#)). Blue (β) phosphorene is significantly better suited to make small zigzag PNTs than the other structural phases (α , γ , and δ).

5.5.8 Summary

In this work, we investigated a new class of faceted PNT using first-principles calculations. We started our study by examining round armchair and zigzag PNTs of black and blue phosphorous and showed that blue phosphorene is better suited to make small nanotubes. Then we proposed five different type of defect lines to create kinks in β phosphorene sheets. We investigated the formation energy and kink angle of these defects and used this information to create defect-induced faceted PNTs. After identifying some suitable defect combinations, we calculated the formation energy as a function of the PNT radius and demonstrated the enhanced stability of the DIF-PNTs with respect to round tubes. We showed that the VBM and CBM states of the DIF-PNTs are localized on the defect lines and that these states control the electronic properties of the tubes. The band gap of armchair DIF-PNTs increases with the radius and converges to the gap corresponding to isolated (infinitely separated) defect lines. For zigzag DIF-PNTs, a more complicated behavior was observed which originates from the wider structural distortions associated with the defect lines.

Finally, we compared our defect-induced PNTs with the multiphase faceted PNTs proposed by Guan *et al.*[142]. We found similar formation energies for armchair PNTs, but more favorable DIF-PNTs can be created with small radii due to less stringent restrictions regarding the structure (symmetry) of the tubes. For zigzag PNTs, the DIF-PNTs are significantly more stable in comparison to rolled β -

PNTs and previously reported multiphase faceted PNTs. Furthermore, we found a much larger variety of stable zigzag PNTs.

Chapter 6

Summary and outlook

Summary This thesis started with an introduction to graphene and several early 2D materials such as functionalized graphene, group-IVA 2D materials and other 2D materials from layered materials, and briefly covered their diverse physical properties. Inspired by these new materials and new properties, in [chapter 4](#) and [chapter 5](#), the determination of higher level physical properties of several newly discovered or proposed 2D materials were presented as the main results of the thesis. These new 2D materials are phosphorene, 2D-TiS₃, MXenes, 2D-Ca(OH)₂, pentasilicene and penta-hexa-graphene, and additionally, faceted blue PNT. Among these, the last four materials are the theoretically proposed ones from this thesis. The higher level physical properties of these materials that were investigated in this thesis include thermal properties, piezoelectric properties, magnetic properties, transport properties and lithium battery-related properties. Moreover, several ways to modify the properties of these materials were introduced, such as varying the number of layers, application of mechanical strain, forming a heterostructure and the presence of defects. The main results are summarized in the following.

Phosphorene is one of the new 2D materials. It has several allotropes among which blue and black phosphorene are the most stable ones. They have band gaps around 2 eV and high carrier mobilities, which makes them ideal for electronic device application. In [section 4.1](#), we saw the highly anisotropic thermal expansion rate in black phosphorene, in contrast to the isotropic blue phosphorene. This is consistent with their structural properties. There is a less significant negative thermal expansion in these materials in comparison to graphene.

Based on the free energy calculations at finite temperature, we also observed a possible phase transition from black to blue phosphorene as the temperature is increased. In this study, we combined the results from DFT for phonon calculations with the QHA to access the thermal expansion coefficient.

The piezoelectric properties of 2D-TMDs and 2D-TMDOs were evaluated in [section 4.2](#). A number of candidates were identified to deliver better piezoelectricity as compared to the conventional bulk materials. The general trend shows the Ti, Zr, Sn and Cr based TMDs and TMDOs have much better piezoelectric properties than Mo and W based ones. The reduction of the size and weight when using 2D materials will enhance the efficiency of electromechanical applications.

In [section 4.3](#), we constructed a new type of all-carbon 2D materials through structure and bond engineering. A stable configuration can be realized such that on each of the two C atoms in the unit cell, the local magnetic moment is one Bohr magneton . This structure is a mixed composition of penta- and hexagonal C rings, and it has an AFM ground state.

Properties related to Li battery applications were studied in [section 4.4](#) on our proposed heterostructure, which is a bilayer of MXene and graphene. The presence of graphene breaks the stacking symmetry, such that Li atoms bind stronger to MXenes and stay far away from the graphene layer. The binding energy is larger than that in multilayer MXenes, while the diffusion barriers in these two cases are comparable.

2D-Ca(OH)₂ is another 2D material proposed in this thesis. In [section 5.1](#), we have seen negligible influence of the dimension of these materials, despite having a hydrogen-enhanced interlayer interaction. Interestingly, a free-electron-like planar surface state exists in the monolayer and this state has a symmetric charge density distribution with respect to the layer. This symmetry is broken when the system is transformed to a bilayer.

Pentasilicene is a variation of pentagraphene in which carbon atoms are replaced with silicon ones. However, it is not stable as has been indicated by the phonon dispersion having imaginary frequencies. In [section 5.2](#), we stabilized it by transforming it into a bilayer structure where the interlayer bonds are covalent. Surprisingly, the resulting structure is the most stable bilayer silicene to the best of our knowledge.

Strain can also be used to alter the properties of materials. In [section 5.3](#), we used it to enhance the acoustic-phonon limited mobility in 2D-TiS₂. From the deformation potential theory, we explained the proportional relationship of the DPC with the band edge shifts with respect to vacuum under the application of homogeneous strain. The latter is small at a finite strain, which implies the mobility of the material can be large under that strain. More than an order of magnitude increase of the mobility was achieved for this material.

Another way to modify the properties of 2D materials is to construct a heterostructure. In [section 5.4](#), we studied the electrical transport properties of such a system. Taking advantage of the coherent interface of the T and H phase of MoS₂, we formed a lateral heterostructure where two metallic T phases form the electrodes and one semiconducting H phase is the scattering center. The transmission was studied under various electron concentrations to reduce the Schottky barrier height which has been the main obstacle for electron transport at the metal-semiconducting interface. A n-type doping at one electrode and a p-type at the other can reduce the barrier height for both electron and hole.

Finally, a new type of faceted nanotube was designed from blue phosphorene in [section 5.5](#). By introducing line defects in the 2D plane, kinks can be formed to close a faceted tube surface. The advantage of this faceted tubes is the fact that flat edges almost do not cost elastic energy to form. This is energetically more favourable than a curved surface of conventional nanotubes. The most important part of the structure is form by the corners of the faceted tubes, which determines the energy and the electronic band gap of the tubes.

Outlook Nowadays, more and more stable 2D materials are being proposed and synthesized. They need to be explored to fully reveal their potential in both applications and fundamental research. For example, the MXenes family has more than 60 members with a broad range of properties waiting to be characterized. Moreover, with the number of different 2D materials increasing, the possible combinations of forming heterostructures are also yielding a factorial increment. In addition, these heterostructures do not have to be limited to 2D, if one stacks them to a macroscopic thickness, one will end up with layered bulk materials, or nanocomposites, with tailored properties that are designed at the microscale. On the other hand, DFT software packages are being optimized for

higher efficiency and broader capabilities to take full advantage of modern supercomputing facilities. Therefore, the determination of high-level properties of materials on a larger simulated systems becomes accessible and will overcome the barriers that previously limited our understanding of new 2D materials and opens the door to use them in new applications.

Bibliography

- [1] K. S. Novoselov, et al., “Electric field effect in atomically thin carbon films”, *Science* **306**, 666–669 (2004) (cit. on p. 1).
- [2] K. S. Novoselov, et al., “Two-dimensional atomic crystals”, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U. S. A.* **102**, 10451–10453 (2005) (cit. on pp. 1, 16).
- [3] A. K. Geim, and K. S. Novoselov, “The rise of graphene”, *Nat. Mater.* **6**, 183–191 (2007) (cit. on pp. 1, 5, 6).
- [4] T. R. S. A. of Sciences, *The nobel prize in physics 2010 - information for the public*, (2010) https://www.nobelprize.org/nobel_prizes/physics/laureates/2010/popular-physicsprize2010.pdf (visited on 04/14/2017) (cit. on p. 4).
- [5] H. Petroski, *The pencil: a history of design and circumstance* (Knopf, 1990) (cit. on p. 3).
- [6] A. Krishnan, et al., “Graphitic cones and the nucleation of curved carbon surfaces”, *Nature* **388**, 451–454 (1997) (cit. on pp. 3, 5).
- [7] Y. Ohashi, T. Koizumi, T. Yoshikawa, T. Hironaka, and K. Shiiki, “Size effect in the in-plane electrical resistivity of very thin graphite crystals”, *TANSO* **1997**, 235–238 (1997) (cit. on pp. 3, 5).
- [8] M. S. Dresselhaus, and G. Dresselhaus, “Intercalation compounds of graphite”, *Advances in Physics* **51**, 1–186 (2002) (cit. on p. 3).
- [9] H. Shioyama, “Cleavage of graphite to graphene”, *Journal of Materials Science Letters* **20**, 499–500 (2001) (cit. on p. 3).
- [10] R. Peierls, “Quelques propriétés typiques des corps solides”, fre, *Annales de l'institut Henri Poincaré* **5**, 177–222 (1935) (cit. on p. 3).
- [11] L. D. Landau, “On the theory of phase transitions. I.”, *Phys. Z. Sowjet.* **11**, 26 (1937) (cit. on p. 3).
- [12] N. D. Mermin, “Crystalline order in two dimensions”, *Phys. Rev.* **176**, 250–254 (1968) (cit. on p. 3).
- [13] P. R. Wallace, “The band theory of graphite”, *Phys. Rev.* **71**, 622–634 (1947) (cit. on pp. 3, 6).

- [14] A. H. C. Neto, F. Guinea, N. M. R. Peres, K. S. Novoselov, and A. K. Geim, “The electronic properties of graphene”, *Reviews of Modern Physics* **81**, 109–162 (2009) (cit. on pp. 5, 41).
- [15] H. W. Kroto, J. R. Heath, S. C. O’Brien, R. F. Curl, and R. E. Smalley, “C₆₀: buckminsterfullerene”, *Nature* **318**, 162–163 (1985) (cit. on p. 5).
- [16] W. Krätschmer, L. D. Lamb, K. Fostiropoulos, and D. R. Huffman, “Solid c₆₀: a new form of carbon”, *Nature* **347**, 354–358 (1990) (cit. on p. 5).
- [17] S. Iijima, and T. Ichihashi, “Single-shell carbon nanotubes of 1-nm diameter”, *Nature* **363**, 603–605 (1993) (cit. on p. 5).
- [18] R. H. Baughman, A. A. Zakhidov, and W. A. de Heer, “Carbon nanotubes—the route toward applications”, *Science* **297**, 787–792 (2002) (cit. on p. 5).
- [19] K. S. Novoselov, et al., “Two-dimensional gas of massless dirac fermions in graphene”, *Nature* **438**, 197–200 (2005) (cit. on p. 6).
- [20] M. I. Katsnelson, K. S. Novoselov, and A. K. Geim, “Chiral tunnelling and the klein paradox in graphene”, *Nat Phys* **2**, 620–625 (2006) (cit. on p. 6).
- [21] K. S. Novoselov, et al., “Room-temperature quantum hall effect in graphene”, *Science* **315**, 1379–1379 (2007) (cit. on p. 6).
- [22] J. Güttinger, et al., “Transport through graphene quantum dots”, *Reports on Progress in Physics* **75**, 126502 (2012) (cit. on p. 7).
- [23] C. Lee, X. Wei, J. W. Kysar, and J. Hone, “Measurement of the elastic properties and intrinsic strength of monolayer graphene”, *Science* **321**, 385–388 (2008) (cit. on pp. 6, 49).
- [24] K. Bolotin, et al., “Ultrahigh electron mobility in suspended graphene”, *Solid State Communications* **146**, 351–355 (2008) (cit. on p. 6).
- [25] K. I. Bolotin, K. J. Sikes, J. Hone, H. L. Stormer, and P. Kim, “Temperature-dependent transport in suspended graphene”, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **101**, 096802 (2008) (cit. on p. 7).
- [26] A. A. Balandin, et al., “Superior thermal conductivity of single-layer graphene”, *Nano Lett.* **8**, 902–907 (2008) (cit. on p. 7).
- [27] L. Ci, et al., “Atomic layers of hybridized boron nitride and graphene domains”, *Nat. Mater.* **9**, 430–435 (2010) (cit. on p. 7).
- [28] S. Y. Zhou, et al., “Substrate-induced bandgap opening in epitaxial graphene”, *Nat. Mater.* **6**, 770–775 (2007) (cit. on p. 7).
- [29] E. McCann, “Asymmetry gap in the electronic band structure of bilayer graphene”, *Physical Review B* **74**, 161403 (2006) (cit. on p. 7).
- [30] E. V. Castro, et al., “Biased bilayer graphene: semiconductor with a gap tunable by the electric field effect”, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **99**, 216802 (2007) (cit. on p. 7).

- [31] D. C. Elias, et al., "Control of graphene's properties by reversible hydrogenation: evidence for graphane", *Science* **323**, 610–613 (2009) (cit. on pp. 7, 8).
- [32] K.-J. Jeon, et al., "Fluorographene: a wide bandgap semiconductor with ultraviolet luminescence", *ACS Nano* **5**, 1042–1046 (2011) (cit. on pp. 7, 9).
- [33] S. Zhou, D. Siegel, A. Fedorov, and A. Lanzara, "Metal to insulator transition in epitaxial graphene induced by molecular doping", *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **101**, 086402 (2008) (cit. on p. 7).
- [34] K. Nakada, M. Fujita, G. Dresselhaus, and M. S. Dresselhaus, "Edge state in graphene ribbons: nanometer size effect and edge shape dependence", *Phys. Rev. B* **54**, 17954–17961 (1996) (cit. on p. 7).
- [35] V. Barone, O. Hod, and G. E. Scuseria, "Electronic structure and stability of semiconducting graphene nanoribbons", *Nano Lett.* **6**, 2748–2754 (2006) (cit. on p. 7).
- [36] Z. Yang, Y. Sun, L. B. Alemany, T. N. Narayanan, and W. E. Billups, "Birch reduction of graphite. edge and interior functionalization by hydrogen", *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **134**, 18689–18694 (2012) (cit. on p. 8).
- [37] J. S. Burgess, et al., "Tuning the electronic properties of graphene by hydrogenation in a plasma enhanced chemical vapor deposition reactor", *Carbon* **49**, 4420–4426 (2011) (cit. on p. 8).
- [38] Y. Wang, et al., "Toward high throughput interconvertible graphane-to-graphene growth and patterning", *ACS nano* **4**, 6146–6152 (2010) (cit. on p. 8).
- [39] D. K. Samarakoon, and X.-Q. Wang, "Chair and twist-boat membranes in hydrogenated graphene", *ACS Nano* **3**, 4017–4022 (2009) (cit. on p. 8).
- [40] A. Ilyin, N. Guseinov, I. Tsyanov, and R. Nemkaeva, "Computer simulation and experimental study of graphane-like structures formed by electrolytic hydrogenation", *Physica E: Low-dimensional Systems and Nanostructures* **43**, 1262–1265 (2011) (cit. on p. 8).
- [41] E. Muñoz, A. K. Singh, M. A. Ribas, E. S. Penev, and B. I. Yakobson, "The ultimate diamond slab: graphane versus graphene", *Diamond and Related Materials* **19**, *Proceedings of Diamond 2009, The 20th European Conference on Diamond, Diamond-Like Materials, Carbon Nanotubes and Nitrides, Part 1*, 368–373 (2010) (cit. on p. 8).
- [42] J. Zhou, et al., "Ferromagnetism in semihydrogenated graphene sheet", *Nano Lett.* **9**, 3867–3870 (2009) (cit. on pp. 8, 71).
- [43] A. I. Shkrebttii, E. Heritage, P. McNelles, J. L. Cabellos, and B. S. Mendozza, "Graphene and graphane functionalization with hydrogen: electronic and optical signatures", *physica status solidi (c)* **9**, 1378–1383 (2012) (cit. on p. 8).

- [44] J. O. Sofo, A. S. Chaudhari, and G. D. Barber, "Graphane: a two-dimensional hydrocarbon", *Phys. Rev. B* **75**, 153401 (2007) (cit. on p. 9).
- [45] O. Leenaerts, H. Peelaers, A. Hernández-Nieves, B. Partoens, and F. Peeters, "First-principles investigation of graphene fluoride and graphane", *Physical Review B* **82**, 195436 (2010) (cit. on p. 9).
- [46] M. Zhu, et al., "Fluorographene nanosheets with broad solvent dispersibility and their applications as a modified layer in organic field-effect transistors", *Phys. Chem. Chem. Phys.* **15**, 20992–21000 (2013) (cit. on pp. 8, 9).
- [47] D. K. Samarakoon, Z. Chen, C. Nicolas, and X.-Q. Wang, "Structural and electronic properties of fluorographene", *Small* **7**, 965–969 (2011) (cit. on p. 8).
- [48] R. R. Nair, et al., "Fluorographene: a two-dimensional counterpart of teflon", *Small* **6**, 2877–2884 (2010) (cit. on p. 9).
- [49] C.-L. Lin, et al., "Substrate-induced symmetry breaking in silicene", *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **110**, 076801 (2013) (cit. on p. 10).
- [50] L. Matthes, O. Pulci, and F. Bechstedt, "Massive dirac quasiparticles in the optical absorbance of graphene, silicene, germanene, and tinene", *J. Phys.: Condens. Matter* **25**, 395305 (2013) (cit. on pp. 10, 11).
- [51] S. Balendhran, S. Walia, H. Nili, S. Sriram, and M. Bhaskaran, "Elemental analogues of graphene: silicene, germanene, stanene, and phosphorene", *Small* **11**, 640–652 (2015) (cit. on p. 10).
- [52] J. C. Garcia, D. B. de Lima, L. V. C. Assali, and J. F. Justo, "Group iv graphene- and graphane-like nanosheets", *The Journal of Physical Chemistry C* **115**, 13242–13246 (2011) (cit. on p. 10).
- [53] A. Manjanath, V. Kumar, and A. K. Singh, "Mechanical and electronic properties of pristine and ni-doped si, ge, and sn sheets", *Phys. Chem. Chem. Phys.* **16**, 1667–1671 (2014) (cit. on p. 11).
- [54] P. Vogt, et al., "Silicene: compelling experimental evidence for graphene-like two-dimensional silicon", *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **108**, 155501 (2012) (cit. on p. 11).
- [55] L. Li, et al., "Buckled germanene formation on pt (111)", *Advanced Materials* **26**, 4820–4824 (2014) (cit. on p. 11).
- [56] C.-L. Lin, et al., "Structure of silicene grown on ag (111)", *Applied Physics Express* **5**, 045802 (2012) (cit. on p. 11).
- [57] T. P. Kaloni, and U. Schwingenschlögl, "Weak interaction between germanene and GaAs (0001) by h intercalation: a route to exfoliation", *J. Appl. Phys.* **114**, 184307 (2013) (cit. on p. 11).
- [58] N. Alem, et al., "Atomically thin hexagonal boron nitride probed by ultrahigh-resolution transmission electron microscopy", *Physical Review B* **80**, 155425 (2009) (cit. on p. 11).

- [59] H. L. Zhuang, and R. G. Hennig, "Electronic structures of single-layer boron pnictides", *Appl. Phys. Lett.* **101**, 153109 (2012) (cit. on p. 12).
- [60] A. Bosak, et al., "Elasticity of hexagonal boron nitride: inelastic x-ray scattering measurements", *Phys. Rev. B* **73**, 041402 (2006) (cit. on p. 12).
- [61] I. Jo, et al., "Thermal conductivity and phonon transport in suspended few-layer hexagonal boron nitride", *Nano Lett.* **13**, 550–554 (2013) (cit. on p. 12).
- [62] L. H. Li, and Y. Chen, "Atomically thin boron nitride: unique properties and applications", *Adv. Funct. Mater.* **26**, 2594–2608 (2016) (cit. on p. 12).
- [63] G.-H. Lee, et al., "Flexible and transparent mos2 Field-effect transistors on hexagonal boron nitride-graphene heterostructures", *ACS Nano* **7**, 7931–7936 (2013) (cit. on p. 12).
- [64] D. R., et al., "Boron nitride substrates for high-quality graphene electronics", *Nat Nano* **5**, 722–726 (2010) (cit. on p. 12).
- [65] v. W. C. Benjah-bmm27 (Own work) [Public domain], *Boron-nitride-(hexagonal)-side-3D-balls*, (2007) [https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File%20Boron-nitride-\(hexagonal\)-side-3D-balls.png](https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File%20Boron-nitride-(hexagonal)-side-3D-balls.png) (visited on 05/02/2017) (cit. on p. 12).
- [66] Q. H. Wang, K. Kalantar-Zadeh, A. Kis, J. N. Coleman, and M. S. Strano, "Electronics and optoelectronics of two-dimensional transition metal dichalcogenides", *Nat. Nanotechnol.* **7**, 699–712 (2012) (cit. on pp. 13, 60).
- [67] Z. Y. Zhu, Y. C. Cheng, and U. Schwingenschlögl, "Giant spin-orbit-induced spin splitting in two-dimensional transition-metal dichalcogenide semiconductors", *Phys. Rev. B* **84**, 153402 (2011) (cit. on p. 13).
- [68] J. Kim, S. Byun, A. J. Smith, J. Yu, and J. Huang, "Enhanced electrocatalytic properties of transition-metal dichalcogenides sheets by spontaneous gold nanoparticle decoration", *The Journal of Physical Chemistry Letters* **4**, 1227–1232 (2013) (cit. on p. 13).
- [69] Y. Huang, et al., "Synthesis of few-layered mos2 nanosheet-coated electrospun sno2 nanotube heterostructures for enhanced hydrogen evolution reaction", *Nanoscale* **6**, 10673–10679 (2014) (cit. on p. 13).
- [70] B. Radisavljevic, A. Radenovic, J. Brivio, V. Giacometti, and A. Kis, "Single-layer MoS₂ transistors", *Nature Nanotech.* **6**, 147–150 (2011) (cit. on p. 13).
- [71] G. Sun, et al., "Fabrication of ultralong hybrid microfibers from nanosheets of reduced graphene oxide and transition-metal dichalcogenides and their application as supercapacitors", *Angewandte Chemie* **126**, 12784–12788 (2014) (cit. on p. 13).
- [72] K. Chang, and W. Chen, "L-cysteine-assisted synthesis of layered mos2/graphene composites with excellent electrochemical performances for lithium ion batteries", *ACS Nano* **5**, 4720–4728 (2011) (cit. on p. 13).

- [73] D. Chen, et al., "In situ nitrogenated graphene-few-layer ws₂ composites for fast and reversible li⁺ storage", *Nanoscale* **5**, 7890–7896 (2013) (cit. on p. 13).
- [74] Y. Li, Y.-L. Li, C. M. Araujo, W. Luo, and R. Ahuja, "Single-layer mos₂ as an efficient photocatalyst", *Catal. Sci. Technol.* **3**, 2214–2220 (2013) (cit. on p. 13).
- [75] E. Parzinger, et al., "Photocatalytic stability of single- and few-layer mos₂", *ACS Nano* **9**, 11302–11309 (2015) (cit. on p. 13).
- [76] L. Cheng, et al., "Pegylated ws₂ Nanosheets as a multifunctional theranostic agent for in vivo dual-modal CT/photoacoustic imaging guided photothermal therapy", *Advanced Materials* **26**, 1886–1893 (2014) (cit. on p. 13).
- [77] W. Yin, et al., "High-throughput synthesis of single-layer mos₂ Nanosheets as a near-infrared photothermal-triggered drug delivery for effective cancer therapy", *ACS Nano* **8**, 6922–6933 (2014) (cit. on p. 13).
- [78] M. Chhowalla, et al., "The chemistry of two-dimensional layered transition metal dichalcogenide nanosheets", *Nat. Chem.* **5**, 263–275 (2013) (cit. on p. 14).
- [79] X. Wang, et al., "Room-temperature all-semiconducting sub-10-nm graphene nanoribbon field-effect transistors", *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **100**, 206803 (2008) (cit. on p. 15).
- [80] M. Y. Han, B. Özyilmaz, Y. Zhang, and P. Kim, "Energy band-gap engineering of graphene nanoribbons", *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **98**, 206805 (2007) (cit. on p. 15).
- [81] Y.-W. Son, M. L. Cohen, and S. G. Louie, "Half-metallic graphene nanoribbons", *Nature* **444**, 347–349 (cit. on p. 15).
- [82] P. R. Bandaru, "Electrical properties and applications of carbon nanotube structures", *J. Nanosci. Nanotechnol.* **7**, 1239–1267 (2007) (cit. on p. 15).
- [83] J. Prasek, et al., "Methods for carbon nanotubes synthesis-review", *J. Mater. Chem.* **21**, 15872–15884 (2011) (cit. on p. 15).
- [84] A. C. Ferrari, et al., "Science and technology roadmap for graphene, related two-dimensional crystals, and hybrid systems", *Nanoscale* **7**, 4598–4810 (2015) (cit. on p. 16).
- [85] Z. H. Ni, et al., "On resonant scatterers as a factor limiting carrier mobility in graphene", *Nano Lett.* **10**, 3868–3872 (2010) (cit. on p. 16).
- [86] N. Mishra, J. Boeckl, N. Motta, and F. Iacopi, "Graphene growth on silicon carbide: a review", *physica status solidi (a)* **213**, 2277–2289 (2016) (cit. on p. 17).
- [87] N. Petrone, et al., "Chemical vapor deposition-derived graphene with electrical performance of exfoliated graphene", *Nano Lett.* **12**, 2751–2756 (2012) (cit. on p. 18).

- [88] S. Bae, et al., “Roll-to-roll production of 30-inch graphene films for transparent electrodes”, *Nat Nano* **5**, 574–578 (2010) (cit. on p. 18).
- [89] S. Kirklin, et al., “The open quantum materials database (oqmd): assessing the accuracy of DFT formation energies”, *npj Comput. Mater.* **1**, 15010 (2015) (cit. on p. 19).
- [90] P. Hohenberg, and W. Kohn, “Inhomogeneous electron gas”, *Phys. Rev.* **136**, B864–B871 (1964) (cit. on p. 19).
- [91] W. Kohn, and L. J. Sham, “Self-consistent equations including exchange and correlation effects”, *Phys. Rev.* **140**, A1133–A1138 (1965) (cit. on p. 20).
- [92] N. Drummond, *Qmc studies of real systems*, (2017) <http://slideplayer.com/slide/4763755/> (visited on 05/10/2017) (cit. on p. 20).
- [93] M. Born, and R. Oppenheimer, “Zur quantentheorie der moleküle”, *Annalen der Physik* **389**, 457–484 (1927) (cit. on p. 21).
- [94] M. Levy, “Universal variational functionals of electron densities, first-order density matrices, and natural spin-orbitals and solution of the v-representability problem”, *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences* **76**, 6062–6065 (1979) (cit. on p. 21).
- [95] J. P. Perdew, *Electronic structure of solids' 91*, Vol. 11 (Akademie Verlag, Berlin, 1991) (cit. on p. 24).
- [96] J. P. Perdew, et al., “Atoms, molecules, solids, and surfaces: applications of the generalized gradient approximation for exchange and correlation”, *Phys. Rev. B* **46**, 6671–6687 (1992) (cit. on p. 24).
- [97] J. P. Perdew, K. Burke, and M. Ernzerhof, “Generalized gradient approximation made simple [phys. rev. lett. 77, 3865 (1996)]”, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **78**, 1396–1396 (1997) (cit. on p. 24).
- [98] Q. Peng, F. Duarte, and R. S. Paton, “Computing organic stereoselectivity - from concepts to quantitative calculations and predictions”, *Chem. Soc. Rev.* **45**, 6093–6107 (2016) (cit. on p. 25).
- [99] C. Adamo, and V. Barone, “Toward reliable density functional methods without adjustable parameters: the pbe0 model”, *The Journal of Chemical Physics* **110**, 6158–6170 (1999) (cit. on p. 24).
- [100] J. Heyd, G. E. Scuseria, and M. Ernzerhof, “Hybrid functionals based on a screened coulomb potential”, *The Journal of Chemical Physics* **118**, 8207–8215 (2003) (cit. on p. 24).
- [101] M. J. Lucero, T. M. Henderson, and G. E. Scuseria, “Improved semiconductor lattice parameters and band gaps from a middle-range screened hybrid exchange functional”, *J. Phys.: Condens. Matter* **24**, 145504 (2012) (cit. on p. 26).
- [102] D. C. Langreth, and J. P. Perdew, “Theory of nonuniform electronic systems. i. analysis of the gradient approximation and a generalization that works”, *Phys. Rev. B* **21**, 5469–5493 (1980) (cit. on p. 25).

- [103] C. Fiolhais, F. Nogueira, and M. A. L. Marques, eds., *A primer in density functional theory* (Springer Berlin Heidelberg, 2003) (cit. on p. 27).
- [104] R. W. Godby, M. Schlüter, and L. J. Sham, “Self-energy operators and exchange-correlation potentials in semiconductors”, *Phys. Rev. B* **37**, 10159–10175 (1988) (cit. on p. 27).
- [105] D. Vanderbilt, “Soft self-consistent pseudopotentials in a generalized eigenvalue formalism”, *Phys. Rev. B* **41**, 7892–7895 (1990) (cit. on p. 29).
- [106] P. E. Blöchl, “Projector augmented-wave method”, *Phys. Rev. B* **50**, 17953–17979 (1994) (cit. on p. 29).
- [107] G. Kresse, and D. Joubert, “From ultrasoft pseudopotentials to the projector augmented-wave method”, *Phys. Rev. B* **59**, 1758–1775 (1999) (cit. on p. 29).
- [108] *List of quantum chemistry and solid-state physics software*, (2017) https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_quantum_chemistry_and_solid-state_physics_software (visited on 05/15/2017) (cit. on p. 30).
- [109] K. Lejaeghere, et al., “Reproducibility in density functional theory calculations of solids”, *Science* **351** (2016) 10.1126/science.aad3000 (cit. on p. 30).
- [110] G. Kresse, and J. Hafner, “*Ab initio* molecular-dynamics simulation of the liquid-metal-amorphous-semiconductor transition in germanium”, *Phys. Rev. B* **49**, 14251–14269 (1994) (cit. on p. 30).
- [111] G. Kresse, and J. Furthmüller, “Efficiency of *ab-initio* total energy calculations for metals and semiconductors using a plane-wave basis set”, *Computational Materials Science* **6**, 15–50 (1996) (cit. on p. 30).
- [112] J. D. van der Waals, “Over de continuiteit van den gas- en vloeistoftoestand (on the continuity of the gas and liquid state)”, Ph.D. thesis (University of Leiden, 1873) (cit. on p. 33).
- [113] B. Partoens, and F. M. Peeters, “From graphene to graphite: electronic structure around the *K* point”, *Phys. Rev. B* **74**, 075404 (2006) (cit. on pp. 34, 35).
- [114] K. F. Mak, M. Y. Sfeir, J. A. Misewich, and T. F. Heinz, “The evolution of electronic structure in few-layer graphene revealed by optical spectroscopy”, *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences* **107**, 14999–15004 (2010) (cit. on p. 34).
- [115] R. Saito, G. Dresselhaus, and M. Dresselhaus, *Physical properties of carbon nanotubes* (Imperial College Press, 1998) (cit. on p. 35).
- [116] K. F. Mak, C. Lee, J. Hone, J. Shan, and T. F. Heinz, “Atomically ThinMoS₂: a new direct-gap semiconductor”, *Physical Review Letters* **105** (2010) 10.1103/physrevlett.105.136805 (cit. on p. 36).

- [117] J. E. Padilha, H. Peelaers, A. Janotti, and C. G. V. de Walle, “Nature and evolution of the band-edge states inMoS₂: from monolayer to bulk”, *Physical Review B* **90** (2014) 10.1103/physrevb.90.205420 (cit. on p. 37).
- [118] S. photo, and royalty-free images on Fotolia.com - Pic 128894654, *Sp3sp2sp hybrid orbitals*, (2016) <https://www.fotolia.com/id/128894654> (visited on 05/25/2017) (cit. on p. 38).
- [119] C. Coulson, and W. Moffitt, “I. the properties of certain strained hydrocarbons”, *Phil. Mag.* **40**, 1–35 (1949) (cit. on pp. 37, 74).
- [120] T. Wassmann, A. P. Seitsonen, A. M. Saitta, M. Lazzeri, and F. Mauri, “Clar’s theory, π -electron distribution, and geometry of graphene nanoribbons”, *Journal of the American Chemical Society* **132**, PMID: 20178362, 3440–3451 (2010) (cit. on p. 39).
- [121] T. Cole, *Double bond*, (2004) http://images.slideplayer.com/14/433976/slides/slide_7.jpg (visited on 04/21/2017) (cit. on p. 40).
- [122] Z. Liu, J. Wang, and J. Li, “Dirac cones in two-dimensional systems: from hexagonal to square lattices”, *Phys. Chem. Chem. Phys.* **15**, 18855–18862 (2013) (cit. on pp. 41, 42).
- [123] J. Wang, S. Deng, Z. Liu, and Z. Liu, “The rare two-dimensional materials with dirac cones”, *Natl. Sci. Rev.* **2**, 22–39 (2015) (cit. on p. 41).
- [124] Y. Hasegawa, R. Konno, H. Nakano, and M. Kohmoto, “Zero modes of tight-binding electrons on the honeycomb lattice”, *Phys. Rev. B* **74**, 033413 (2006) (cit. on p. 42).
- [125] G. J. Ackland, M. C. Warren, and S. J. Clark, “Practical methods in ab initio lattice dynamics”, *J. Phys. Condens. Matter* **9**, 7861–7872 (1997) (cit. on p. 44).
- [126] K. Parlinski, “Phonons calculated from first-principles”, *École thématique la Société Française la Neutron.* **12**, 161–166 (2011) (cit. on p. 44).
- [127] C. Kittel, *Introduction to solid state physics* (John Wiley & Sons, Inc., New York, 2004) (cit. on p. 45).
- [128] M. Neek-Amal, and F. M. Peeters, “Lattice thermal properties of graphane: thermal contraction, roughness, and heat capacity”, *Phys. Rev. B* **83**, 235437 (2011) (cit. on p. 45).
- [129] J. Brivio, D. T. L. Alexander, and A. Kis, “Ripples and layers in ultrathin mos₂ membranes”, *Nano Lett.* **11**, 5148–5153 (2011) (cit. on p. 45).
- [130] A. Togo, and I. Tanaka, “First principles phonon calculations in materials science”, *Scr. Mater.* **108**, 1–5 (2015) (cit. on p. 47).
- [131] J. Nye, *Physical properties of crystals: their representation by tensors and matrices*, Oxford science publications (Clarendon Press, 1985) (cit. on pp. 48, 65).

- [132] K. N. Kudin, G. E. Scuseria, and B. I. Yakobson, "C₂F, BN, and c nanoshell elasticity from ab initio computations", *Physical Review B* **64** (2001) 10.1103/physrevb.64.235406 (cit. on p. 49).
- [133] M. Topsakal, S. Cahangirov, and S. Ciraci, "The response of mechanical and electronic properties of graphane to the elastic strain", *Appl. Phys. Lett.* **96**, 091912 (2010) (cit. on p. 49).
- [134] S. Bertolazzi, J. Brivio, and A. Kis, "Stretching and breaking of ultrathin mos2", *ACS Nano* **5**, 9703–9709 (2011) (cit. on p. 49).
- [135] R. C. Cooper, et al., "Nonlinear elastic behavior of two-dimensional molybdenum disulfide", *Phys. Rev. B* **87**, 035423 (2013) (cit. on pp. 49, 65).
- [136] C. U. E. Department, *Materials data book*, (2003) <http://www-mdp.eng.cam.ac.uk/web/library/enginfo/cueddatabooks/materials.pdf> (visited on 05/31/2017) (cit. on p. 49).
- [137] M. Born, "On the stability of crystal lattices. i", *Mathematical Proceedings of the Cambridge Philosophical Society* **36**, 160–172 (1940) (cit. on p. 49).
- [138] F. Mouhat, and F.-X. Coudert, "Necessary and sufficient elastic stability conditions in various crystal systems", *Phys. Rev. B* **90**, 224104 (2014) (cit. on pp. 49, 116).
- [139] H. Liu, et al., "Phosphorene: an unexplored 2D semiconductor with a high hole mobility", *ACS Nano* **8**, 4033–4041 (2014) (cit. on pp. 51, 53).
- [140] L. Li, et al., "Black phosphorus field-effect transistors.", *Nature Nanotech.* **9**, 372–7 (2014) (cit. on pp. 51, 53).
- [141] Z. Zhu, and D. Tománek, "Semiconducting layered blue phosphorus: a computational study", *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **112**, 176802 (2014) (cit. on pp. 52, 53, 57).
- [142] J. Guan, Z. Zhu, and D. Tománek, "Phase coexistence and metal-insulator transition in few-layer phosphorene: a computational study", *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **113**, 046804 (2014) (cit. on pp. 52, 150, 152–154, 161, 163, 164).
- [143] M. Wu, H. Fu, L. Zhou, K. Yao, and X. C. Zeng, "Nine new phosphorene polymorphs with non-honeycomb structures: a much extended family", *Nano Lett.* **15**, 3557–3562 (2015) (cit. on pp. 52, 150).
- [144] D. Çakır, H. Sahin, and F. M. Peeters, "Tuning of the electronic and optical properties of single-layer black phosphorus by strain", *Phys. Rev. B* **90**, 205421 (2014) (cit. on pp. 53, 57).
- [145] X. Wang, et al., "Highly anisotropic and robust excitons in monolayer black phosphorus", *Nat. Nanotechnol.* **10**, 517–521 (2015) (cit. on p. 53).
- [146] Y. Maruyama, S. Suzuki, K. Kobayashi, and S. Tanuma, "Synthesis and some properties of black phosphorus single crystals", *Physica B+C* **105**, 99–102 (1981) (cit. on p. 53).

- [147] S. Narita, et al., "Electrical and optical properties of black phosphorus single crystals", *Physica B+C* **117**, 422–424 (1983) (cit. on p. 53).
- [148] A. Jain, and A. J. H. McGaughey, "Strongly anisotropic in-plane thermal transport in single-layer black phosphorene", *Sci. Rep.* **5**, 8501 (2015) (cit. on p. 53).
- [149] Q. Wei, and X. Peng, "Superior mechanical flexibility of phosphorene and few-layer black phosphorus", *Applied Physics Letters* **104**, 251915 (2014) (cit. on p. 53).
- [150] L. Kou, T. Frauenheim, and C. Chen, "Phosphorene as a superior gas sensor: selective adsorption and distinct i-v response", *J. Phys. Chem. Lett.* **5**, 2675–2681 (2014) (cit. on p. 53).
- [151] M. Tahir, P. Vasilopoulos, and F. M. Peeters, "Magneto-optical transport properties of monolayer phosphorene", *preprint arXiv:1505.06780* (2015) (cit. on p. 53).
- [152] X. Zhou, et al., "Landau levels and magneto-transport property of monolayer phosphorene", *arXiv preprint arXiv:1411.4275* (2014) (cit. on p. 53).
- [153] N. Mounet, and N. Marzari, "First-principles determination of the structural, vibrational and thermodynamic properties of diamond, graphite, and derivatives", *Phys. Rev. B* **71**, 205214 (2005) (cit. on pp. 54, 55, 59).
- [154] D. Çakır, F. M. Peeters, and C. Sevik, "Mechanical and thermal properties of h-mx 2 ($m = cr, mo, w; x = o, s, se, te$) monolayers: a comparative study", *Appl. Phys. Lett.* **104**, 203110 (2014) (cit. on pp. 54, 58, 65).
- [155] C. Sevik, "Assessment on lattice thermal properties of two-dimensional honeycomb structures: graphene, h-BN, h-MoS₂, and h-MoSe₂", *Physical Review B* **89** (2014) 10.1103/physrevb.89.035422 (cit. on pp. 54, 58).
- [156] S. Baroni, P. Giannozzi, and E. Isaev, "Density-functional perturbation theory for quasi-harmonic calculations", *Reviews in Mineralogy and Geochemistry* **71**, 39–57 (2010) (cit. on p. 54).
- [157] B. Grabowski, L. Ismer, T. Hickel, and J. Neugebauer, "Ab initio up to the melting point: anharmonicity and vacancies in aluminum", *Phys. Rev. B* **79**, 134106 (2009) (cit. on p. 54).
- [158] B. B. Karki, R. M. Wentzcovitch, S. de Gironcoli, and S. Baroni, "High-pressure lattice dynamics and thermoelasticity of mgo", *Phys. Rev. B* **61**, 8793–8800 (2000) (cit. on p. 54).
- [159] P. Pavone, et al., "Ab initio lattice dynamics of diamond", *Phys. Rev. B* **48**, 3156–3163 (1993) (cit. on p. 55).
- [160] A. Togo, L. Chaput, I. Tanaka, and G. Hug, "First-principles phonon calculations of thermal expansion in Ti₃SiC₂, Ti₃AlC₂, and Ti₃GeC₂", *Phys. Rev. B* **81**, 174301 (2010) (cit. on p. 56).
- [161] A. Togo, *Phonopy*, (2017) <https://atztogo.github.io/phonopy/> (visited on 07/04/2017) (cit. on p. 56).

- [162] B. Sa, Y.-L. Li, J. Qi, R. Ahuja, and Z. Sun, "Strain engineering for phosphorene: the potential application as a photocatalyst", *The Journal of Physical Chemistry C* **118**, 26560–26568 (2014) (cit. on p. 56).
- [163] R. Fei, and L. Yang, "Lattice vibrational modes and raman scattering spectra of strained phosphorene", *Appl. Phys. Lett.* **105**, 083120, 083120 (2014) (cit. on p. 56).
- [164] R. Fei, and L. Yang, "Strain-engineering the anisotropic electrical conductance of few-layer black phosphorus", *Nano Lett.* **14**, 2884–2889 (2014) (cit. on pp. 57, 122, 133).
- [165] J.-W. Jiang, and H. S. Park, "Negative poisson's ratio in single-layer black phosphorus", *Nat. Commun.* **5**, 4727 (2014) (cit. on p. 58).
- [166] D. Jariwala, V. K. Sangwan, L. J. Lauhon, T. J. Marks, and M. C. Hersam, "Emerging device applications for semiconducting two-dimensional transition metal dichalcogenides", *ACS Nano* **8**, 1102–1120 (2014) (cit. on p. 60).
- [167] K.-A. N. Duerloo, M. T. Ong, and E. J. Reed, "Intrinsic piezoelectricity in two-dimensional materials", *The Journal of Physical Chemistry Letters* **3**, 2871–2876 (2012) (cit. on pp. 61–65, 67, 68).
- [168] H. Zhu, et al., "Observation of piezoelectricity in free-standing monolayer mos2", *Nature nanotechnology* **10**, 151–155 (2015) (cit. on pp. 61, 67).
- [169] W. Li, and J. Li, "Piezoelectricity in two-dimensional group-iii monochalcogenides", *Nano Research* **8**, 3796–3802 (2015) (cit. on p. 61).
- [170] H. J. Xiang, J. Yang, J. G. Hou, and Q. Zhu, "Piezoelectricity in zno nanowires: a first-principles study", *Appl. Phys. Lett.* **89**, 223111 (2006) (cit. on p. 61).
- [171] G. Tomasz, and W. Zielinski, *How does a piezoelectric igniter work?*, (2013) <https://qph.ec.quoracdn.net/main-qimg-b9c33a87f3be9dd104214145364cfaf2> (visited on 07/07/2017) (cit. on p. 62).
- [172] S. Baroni, S. de Gironcoli, A. Dal Corso, and P. Giannozzi, "Phonons and related crystal properties from density-functional perturbation theory", *Rev. Mod. Phys.* **73**, 515–562 (2001) (cit. on pp. 62, 107).
- [173] X. Wu, D. Vanderbilt, and D. R. Hamann, "Systematic treatment of displacements, strains, and electric fields in density-functional perturbation theory", *Phys. Rev. B* **72**, 035105 (2005) (cit. on p. 62).
- [174] D. Vanderbilt, "Berry-phase theory of proper piezoelectric response", *J. Phys. Chem. Solids* **61**, 147–151 (2000) (cit. on pp. 62, 63, 67).
- [175] M. T. Ong, K.-A. N. Duerloo, and E. J. Reed, "The effect of hydrogen and fluorine coadsorption on the piezoelectric properties of graphene", *The Journal of Physical Chemistry C* **117**, 3615–3620 (2013) (cit. on p. 63).
- [176] H. J. Kim, M. Noor-A-Alam, J. Y. Son, and Y.-H. Shin, "Origin of piezoelectricity in monolayer halogenated graphane piezoelectrics", *Chem. Phys. Lett.* **603**, 62–66 (2014) (cit. on p. 63).

- [177] F. A. Rasmussen, and K. S. Thygesen, “Computational 2D materials database: electronic structure of transition-metal dichalcogenides and oxides”, *The Journal of Physical Chemistry C* **119**, 13169–13183 (2015) (cit. on p. 64).
- [178] C. Ataca, H. Şahin, and S. Ciraci, “Stable, single-layer mx₂ Transition-metal oxides and dichalcogenides in a honeycomb-like structure”, *The Journal of Physical Chemistry C* **116**, 8983–8999 (2012) (cit. on p. 64).
- [179] H. Guo, N. Lu, L. Wang, X. Wu, and X. C. Zeng, “Tuning electronic and magnetic properties of early transition-metal dichalcogenides via tensile strain”, *The Journal of Physical Chemistry C* **118**, 7242–7249 (2014) (cit. on p. 64).
- [180] Q. Peng, and S. De, “Outstanding mechanical properties of monolayer mos₂ and its application in elastic energy storage”, *Phys. Chem. Chem. Phys.* **15**, 19427–19437 (2013) (cit. on p. 65).
- [181] J. Kang, S. Tongay, J. Zhou, J. Li, and J. Wu, “Band offsets and heterostructures of two-dimensional semiconductors”, *Appl. Phys. Lett.* **102**, 012111 (2013) (cit. on p. 65).
- [182] M. Born, and K. Huang, *Dynamical theory of crystal lattices*, International series of monographs on physics (Clarendon Press, 1998) (cit. on p. 65).
- [183] H. L. Zhuang, M. D. Johannes, M. N. Blonsky, and R. G. Hennig, “Computational prediction and characterization of single-layer crs₂”, *Appl. Phys. Lett.* **104**, 022116 (2014) (cit. on p. 67).
- [184] K. H. Michel, and B. Verberck, “Theory of elastic and piezoelectric effects in two-dimensional hexagonal boron nitride”, *Phys. Rev. B* **80**, 224301 (2009) (cit. on p. 67).
- [185] K. H. Michel, and B. Verberck, “Phonon dispersions and piezoelectricity in bulk and multilayers of hexagonal boron nitride”, *Phys. Rev. B* **83**, 115328 (2011) (cit. on p. 67).
- [186] K. H. Michel, and B. Verberck, “Theory of phonon dispersions and piezoelectricity in multilayers of hexagonal boron-nitride”, *physica status solidi (b)* **248**, 2720–2723 (2011) (cit. on p. 67).
- [187] M. T. Ong, and E. J. Reed, “Engineered piezoelectricity in graphene”, *ACS Nano* **6**, 1387–1394 (2012) (cit. on p. 69).
- [188] R. Bechmann, “Elastic and piezoelectric constants of alpha-quartz”, *Phys. Rev.* **110**, 1060–1061 (1958) (cit. on p. 69).
- [189] C. M. Lueng, H. L. W. Chan, C. Surya, and C. L. Choy, “Piezoelectric coefficient of aluminum nitride and gallium nitride”, *J. Appl. Phys.* **88**, 5360–5363 (2000) (cit. on p. 69).
- [190] V. Georgakilas, et al., “Functionalization of graphene: covalent and non-covalent approaches, derivatives and applications”, *Chem. Rev.* **112**, 6156–6214 (2012) (cit. on p. 71).

- [191] M. Inagaki, and F. Kang, "Graphene derivatives: graphane, fluorographene, graphene oxide, graphyne and graphdiyne", *J. Mater. Chem. A* **2**, 13193–13206 (2014) (cit. on p. 71).
- [192] E. KAN, Z. LI, and J. YANG, "Magnetism in graphene systems", *Nano* **03**, 433–442 (2008) (cit. on p. 71).
- [193] K. Xu, et al., "Hydrogen dangling bonds induce ferromagnetism in two-dimensional metal-free graphitic-c₃N₄ nanosheets", *Chem. Sci.* **6**, 283–287 (2015) (cit. on p. 71).
- [194] A. Y. S. Eng, et al., "Searching for magnetism in hydrogenated graphene: using highly hydrogenated graphene prepared via birch reduction of graphite oxides", *ACS Nano* **7**, 5930–5939 (2013) (cit. on p. 71).
- [195] S. Okada, and A. Oshiyama, "Magnetic ordering in hexagonally bonded sheets with first-row elements", *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **87**, 146803 (2001) (cit. on p. 71).
- [196] Q. Miao, et al., "Magnetic properties of n-doped graphene with high curie temperature", *Sci. Rep.* **6**, 21832 (2016) (cit. on p. 71).
- [197] V. M. Pereira, F. Guinea, J. M. B. Lopes dos Santos, N. M. R. Peres, and A. H. Castro Neto, "Disorder induced localized states in graphene", *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **96**, 036801 (2006) (cit. on p. 71).
- [198] O. V. Yazyev, and L. Helm, "Defect-induced magnetism in graphene", *Phys. Rev. B* **75**, 125408 (2007) (cit. on p. 71).
- [199] R. Baughman, H. Eckhardt, and M. Kertesz, "Structure-property predictions for new planar forms of carbon: layered phases containing sp² and sp atoms", *The Journal of chemical physics* **87**, 6687–6699 (1987) (cit. on p. 71).
- [200] A. Ivanovskii, "Graphynes and graphdyines", *Prog. Solid State Chem.* **41**, 1–19 (2013) (cit. on p. 71).
- [201] X.-Q. Zhang, C.-H. Lin, Y.-W. Tseng, K.-H. Huang, and Y.-H. Lee, "Synthesis of lateral heterostructures of semiconducting atomic layers", *Nano Letters* **15**, 410–415 (2015) (cit. on pp. 71, 108, 138).
- [202] X. Zhang, L. Wei, J. Tan, and M. Zhao, "Prediction of an ultrasoft graphene allotrope with dirac cones", *Carbon N. Y.* **105**, 323–329 (2016) (cit. on p. 72).
- [203] K. Momma, and F. Izumi, "VESTA3 for three-dimensional visualization of crystal, volumetric and morphology data", *J. Appl. Cryst.* **44**, 1272–1276 (2011) (cit. on pp. 72, 112).
- [204] E. Yoo, et al., "Large reversible li storage of graphene nanosheet families for use in rechargeable lithium ion batteries", *Nano Letters* **8**, PMID: 18651781, 2277–2282 (2008) (cit. on p. 77).

- [205] Y. Jing, Z. Zhou, C. R. Cabrera, and Z. Chen, "Metallic vs2 monolayer: a promising 2D anode material for lithium ion batteries", *The Journal of Physical Chemistry C* **117**, 25409–25413 (2013) (cit. on p. 77).
- [206] E. Yang, H. Ji, and Y. Jung, "Two-dimensional transition metal dichalcogenide monolayers as promising sodium ion battery anodes", *The Journal of Physical Chemistry C* **119**, 26374–26380 (2015) (cit. on p. 77).
- [207] J. Sun, et al., "A phosphorene–graphene hybrid material as a high-capacity anode for sodium-ion batteries", *Nat. Nano.* **10**, 980–985 (2015) (cit. on p. 77).
- [208] V. V. Kulish, O. I. Malyi, C. Persson, and P. Wu, "Phosphorene as an anode material for na-ion batteries: a first-principles study", *Phys. Chem. Chem. Phys.* **17**, 13921–13928 (2015) (cit. on p. 77).
- [209] J. Hu, et al., "2D electrides as promising anode materials for na-ion batteries from first-principles study", *ACS Applied Materials & Interfaces* **7**, PMID: 26461467, 24016–24022 (2015) (cit. on p. 77).
- [210] D. Er, J. Li, M. Naguib, Y. Gogotsi, and V. B. Shenoy, "Ti3C₂ mxene as a high capacity electrode material for metal (li, na, k, ca) ion batteries", *ACS Applied Materials & Interfaces* **6**, 11173–11179 (2014) (cit. on p. 77).
- [211] M. Naguib, et al., "New two-dimensional niobium and vanadium carbides as promising materials for li-ion batteries", *Journal of the American Chemical Society* **135**, 15966–15969 (2013) (cit. on pp. 77, 78, 88).
- [212] X. Wang, Q. Weng, Y. Yang, Y. Bando, and D. Golberg, "Hybrid two-dimensional materials in rechargeable battery applications and their microscopic mechanisms", *Chem. Soc. Rev.* **45**, 4042–4073 (2016) (cit. on p. 77).
- [213] E. Pomerantseva, and Y. Gogotsi, "Two-dimensional heterostructures for energy storage", *Nature Energy* **2**, 17089 (2017) (cit. on p. 77).
- [214] D. Cakir, C. Sevik, O. Gulseren, and F. M. Peeters, "Mo₂C as a high capacity anode material: a first-principles study", *J. Mater. Chem. A* **4**, 6029–6035 (2016) (cit. on pp. 77, 88).
- [215] C. E. Ren, et al., "Porous two-dimensional transition metal carbide (mxene) flakes for high-performance li-ion storage", *ChemElectroChem* **3**, 689–693 (2016) (cit. on p. 78).
- [216] C. Eames, and M. S. Islam, "Ion intercalation into two-dimensional transition-metal carbides: global screening for new high-capacity battery materials", *Journal of the American Chemical Society* **136**, 16270–16276 (2014) (cit. on p. 78).
- [217] S. Grimme, S. Ehrlich, and L. Goerigk, "Effect of the damping function in dispersion corrected density functional theory", *Journal of Computational Chemistry* **32**, 1456–1465 (2011) (cit. on p. 78).

- [218] W. Tang, E. Sanville, and G. Henkelman, “A grid-based bader analysis algorithm without lattice bias”, *J. Phys.: Condens. Matter* **21**, 084204 (2009) (cit. on pp. 78, 96, 125).
- [219] E. Sanville, S. D. Kenny, R. Smith, and G. Henkelman, “Improved grid-based algorithm for bader charge allocation”, *J. Comput. Chem.* **28**, 899–908 (2007) (cit. on pp. 78, 96, 125).
- [220] G. Henkelman, A. Arnaldsson, and H. Jónsson, “A fast and robust algorithm for bader decomposition of charge density”, *Computational Materials Science* **36**, 354–360 (2006) (cit. on pp. 78, 96, 125).
- [221] M. Yu, and D. R. Trinkle, “Accurate and efficient algorithm for bader charge integration”, *The Journal of Chemical Physics* **134**, 064111 (2011) (cit. on pp. 78, 125).
- [222] G. Henkelman, B. P. Uberuaga, and H. Jansson, “A climbing image nudged elastic band method for finding saddle points and minimum energy paths”, *The Journal of Chemical Physics* **113**, 9901–9904, 9901–9904 (2000) (cit. on p. 79).
- [223] G. Henkelman, and H. Jansson, “Improved tangent estimate in the nudged elastic band method for finding minimum energy paths and saddle points”, *The Journal of Chemical Physics* **113**, 9978–9985, 9978–9985 (2000) (cit. on p. 79).
- [224] E. Mostaani, N. D. Drummond, and V. I. Fal’ko, “Quantum Monte Carlo calculation of the binding energy of bilayer graphene”, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **115**, 115501 (2015) (cit. on p. 81).
- [225] G.-C. Guo, et al., “First-principles study of phosphorene and graphene heterostructure as anode materials for rechargeable li batteries”, *The Journal of Physical Chemistry Letters* **6**, 5002–5008 (2015) (cit. on p. 81).
- [226] A. Samad, M. Noor-A-Alam, and Y.-H. Shin, “First principles study of a SnS₂/graphene heterostructure: a promising anode material for rechargeable Na ion batteries”, *J. Mater. Chem. A* **4**, 14316–14323 (2016) (cit. on p. 81).
- [227] E. Lee, and K. A. Persson, “Li Absorption and Intercalation in Single Layer Graphene and Few Layer Graphene by First Principles”, *Nano Lett.* **12**, 4624–4628 (2012) (cit. on p. 81).
- [228] M. Ashton, R. G. Hennig, and S. B. Sinnott, “Computational characterization of lightweight multilayer mxene li-ion battery anodes”, *Applied Physics Letters* **108**, 023901 (2016) (cit. on p. 81).
- [229] S. N. Shirodkar, and E. Kaxiras, “Li intercalation at graphene/hexagonal boron nitride interfaces”, *Phys. Rev. B* **93**, 245438 (2016) (cit. on p. 83).
- [230] D. Sun, et al., “Structural transformation of mxene (v2C, cr2C, and ta2C) with o groups during lithiation: a first-principles investigation”, *ACS Applied Materials & Interfaces* **8**, 74–81 (2016) (cit. on p. 84).

- [231] Y. Xie, et al., "Role of Surface Structure on Li-Ion Energy Storage Capacity of Two-Dimensional Transition-Metal Carbides", *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **136**, 6385–6394 (2014) (cit. on p. 88).
- [232] Q. Tang, Z. Zhou, and P. Shen, "Are MXenes Promising Anode Materials for Li Ion Batteries? Computational Studies on Electronic Properties and Li Storage Capability of Ti₃C₂ and Ti₃C₂X₂ (X = F, OH) Monolayer", *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **134**, 16909–16916 (2012) (cit. on p. 88).
- [233] K. Persson, Y. Hinuma, Y. S. Meng, A. Van der Ven, and G. Ceder, "Thermodynamic and kinetic properties of the li-graphite system from first-principles calculations", *Phys. Rev. B* **82**, 125416 (2010) (cit. on p. 88).
- [234] M. V. Koudriachova, N. M. Harrison, and S. W. de Leeuw, "Open circuit voltage profile for li-intercalation in rutile and anatase from first principles", *Solid State Ionics* **152–153**, 189–194 (2002) (cit. on p. 88).
- [235] W. Li, Y. Yang, G. Zhang, and Y.-W. Zhang, "Ultrafast and directional diffusion of lithium in phosphorene for high-performance lithium-ion battery", *Nano Letters* **15**, 1691–1697 (2015) (cit. on p. 88).
- [236] N. M., et al., "Mxene: a promising transition metal carbide anode for lithium-ion batteries", *Electrochem. Commun.* **16**, 61 (2012) (cit. on p. 88).
- [237] S. Zhao, W. Kang, and J. Xue, "Role of strain and concentration on the li adsorption and diffusion properties on ti₂C layer", *The Journal of Physical Chemistry C* **118**, 14983–14990 (2014) (cit. on p. 91).
- [238] S. Thinius, M. M. Islam, P. Heitjans, and T. Bredow, "Theoretical study of li migration in lithium?graphite intercalation compounds with dispersion-corrected DFT methods", *The Journal of Physical Chemistry C* **118**, 2273–2280 (2014) (cit. on p. 91).
- [239] S. Lunell, A. Stashans, L. Ojamae, H. Lindstrom, and A. Hagfeldt, "Li and na diffusion in tio₂ from quantum chemical theory versus electrochemical experiment", *Journal of the American Chemical Society* **119**, 7374–7380 (1997) (cit. on p. 91).
- [240] H. Lindstram, et al., "Li+ ion insertion in tio₂ (anatase). 1. chronoamperometry on cvd films and nanoporous films", *The Journal of Physical Chemistry B* **101**, 7710–7716 (1997) (cit. on p. 91).
- [241] C. L. Olson, J. Nelson, and M. S. Islam, "Defect chemistry, surface structures, and lithium insertion in anatase tio₂", *The Journal of Physical Chemistry B* **110**, 9995–10001 (2006) (cit. on p. 91).
- [242] J. Luo, et al., "Pillared structure design of mxene with ultralarge interlayer spacing for high-performance lithium-ion capacitors", *ACS Nano* **11**, 2459–2469 (2017) (cit. on p. 91).
- [243] R. Lieth, *Preparation and crystal growth of materials with layered structures*, Vol. 1 (Springer, 1977) (cit. on p. 94).

- [244] C. Meade, and R. Jeanloz, "Static compression of $\text{Ca}(\text{OH})_2$ at room temperature: observations of amorphization and equation of state measurements to 10.7 GPa", *Geophys. Res. Lett.* **17**, 1157–1160 (1990) (cit. on p. 94).
- [245] M. B. Kruger, Q. Williams, and R. Jeanloz, "Vibrational spectra of $\text{Mg}(\text{OH})_2$ and $\text{Ca}(\text{OH})_2$ under pressure", *The Journal of Chemical Physics* **91**, 5910–5915 (1989) (cit. on p. 94).
- [246] J. H. Nguyen, M. B. Kruger, and R. Jeanloz, "Evidence for "partial" (sublattice) amorphization in $\text{Ca}(\text{OH})_2$ ", *Physical Review Letters* **78**, 1936–1939 (1997) (cit. on p. 94).
- [247] S. Raugei, P. L. Silvestrelli, and M. Parrinello, "Pressure-induced frustration and disorder in $\text{Mg}(\text{OH})_2$ and $\text{Ca}(\text{OH})_2$ ", *Physical Review Letters* **83**, 2222–2225 (1999) (cit. on p. 94).
- [248] T. S. Duffy, C. Meade, Y. Fei, H.-K. Mao, and R. J. Hemley, "High-pressure phase transition in brucite, $\text{Mg}(\text{OH})_2$ ", *Am. Mineral.* **80**, 222–230 (1995) (cit. on p. 94).
- [249] S. Ekbundit, et al., "New high-pressure phase and pressure-induced amorphization of $\text{Ca}(\text{OH})_2$: grain size effect", *J. Solid State Chem.* **126**, 300–307 (1996) (cit. on p. 94).
- [250] K. Catalli, S.-H. Shim, and V. B. Prakapenka, "A crystalline-to-crystalline phase transition in $\text{Ca}(\text{OH})_2$ at 8 GPa and room temperature", *Geophys. Res. Lett.* **35**, L05312 (2008) (cit. on p. 94).
- [251] R. Iizuka, et al., "Pressure responses of portlandite and h-d isotope effects on pressure-induced phase transitions", *Phys. Chem. Miner.* **38**, 777–785 (2011) (cit. on p. 94).
- [252] B. Winkler, et al., "Ab initio total energy study of brucite, diaspore and hypothetical hydrous wadsleyite", English, *Phys. Chem. Miner.* **22**, 461–467 (1995) (cit. on p. 94).
- [253] P. Baranek, A. Lichanot, R. Orlando, and R. Dovesi, "Structural and vibrational properties of solid $\text{Mg}(\text{OH})_2$ and $\text{Ca}(\text{OH})_2$ – performances of various hamiltonians", *Chemical Physics Letters* **340**, 362–369 (2001) (cit. on p. 94).
- [254] K. Azuma, T. Oda, and S. Tanaka, "Vibration analysis of o-h stretching mode in $\text{Mg}(\text{OH})_2$, $\text{Ca}(\text{OH})_2$, LiOH , and NaOH by plane-wave pseudopotential DFT calculation", *Comput. Theor. Chem.* **963**, 215–220 (2011) (cit. on p. 94).
- [255] P. D'Arco, M. Causà, C. Roetti, and B. Silvi, "Periodic hartree-fock study of a weakly bonded layer structure: brucite $\text{Mg}(\text{OH})_2$ ", *Physical Review B* **47**, 3522–3529 (1993) (cit. on pp. 94, 102).
- [256] A. Pishtshev, S. Z. Karazhanov, and M. Klosov, "Materials properties of magnesium and calcium hydroxides from first-principles calculations", *Computational Materials Science* **95**, 693–705 (2014) (cit. on pp. 94, 98, 99).

- [257] A. Pishtshev, S. Z. Karazhanov, and M. Klopov, "Excitons in mg(oh)2 and ca(oh)2 from ab initio calculations", *Solid State Commun.* **193**, 11–15 (2014) (cit. on p. 94).
- [258] W. Ren, and H.-M. Cheng, "The global growth of graphene", *Nature Nanotechnology* **9**, 726–730 (2014) (cit. on p. 94).
- [259] Y. Yu, et al., "Controlled scalable synthesis of uniform, high-quality mono-layer and few-layer MoS2 Films", *Scientific Reports* **3** (2013) 10.1038/srep01866 (cit. on p. 94).
- [260] D. Alfè, "Phon: a program to calculate phonons using the small displacement method", *Comput. Phys. Commun.* **180**, 40 YEARS OF CPC: A celebratory issue focused on quality software for high performance, grid and novel computing architectures, 2622–2633 (2009) (cit. on pp. 95, 107).
- [261] S. Grimme, "Semiempirical gga-type density functional constructed with a long-range dispersion correction", *J. Comput. Chem.* **27**, 1787–1799 (2006) (cit. on p. 95).
- [262] L. Desgranges, et al., "Hydrogen thermal motion in calcium hydroxide: Ca(OH)₂", *Acta Crystallographica Section B* **49**, 812–817 (1993) (cit. on p. 99).
- [263] W. R. Busing, and H. A. Levy, "Neutron diffraction study of calcium hydroxide", *The Journal of Chemical Physics* **26**, 563–568 (1957) (cit. on p. 99).
- [264] C. Ataca, M. Topsakal, E. Aktürk, and S. Ciraci, "A comparative study of lattice dynamics of three- and two-dimensional mos2", *The Journal of Physical Chemistry C* **115**, 16354–16361 (2011) (cit. on p. 99).
- [265] M. Topsakal, E. Aktürk, and S. Ciraci, "First-principles study of two- and one-dimensional honeycomb structures of boron nitride", *Phys. Rev. B* **79**, 115442 (2009) (cit. on p. 100).
- [266] Q. Peng, W. Ji, and S. De, "Mechanical properties of the hexagonal boron nitride monolayer: ab initio study", *Computational Materials Science* **56**, 11–17 (2012) (cit. on p. 100).
- [267] H. Şahin, et al., "Monolayer honeycomb structures of group-iv elements and III-V binary compounds: first-principles calculations", *Phys. Rev. B* **80**, 155453 (2009) (cit. on p. 100).
- [268] M. Posternak, A. Baldereschi, A. J. Freeman, and E. Wimmer, "Prediction of electronic surface states in layered materials: graphite", *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **52**, 863–866 (1984) (cit. on p. 105).
- [269] M. Posternak, A. Baldereschi, A. J. Freeman, E. Wimmer, and M. Weinert, "Prediction of electronic interlayer states in graphite and reinterpretation of alkali bands in graphite intercalation compounds", *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **50**, 761–764 (1983) (cit. on p. 105).
- [270] G. N. Greaves, A. L. Greer, R. S. Lakes, and T. Rouxel, "Poisson's ratio and modern materials", *Nat. Mater.* **10**, 823–837 (2011) (cit. on p. 106).

- [271] Y. Ding, and Y. Wang, "Hydrogen-induced stabilization and tunable electronic structures of penta-silicene: a computational study", *J. Mater. Chem. C* **3**, 11341–11348 (2015) (cit. on pp. 108, 110).
- [272] X. Li, Y. Dai, M. Li, W. Wei, and B. Huang, "Stable si-based pentagonal monolayers: high carrier mobilities and applications in photocatalytic water splitting", *J. Mater. Chem. A* **3**, 24055–24063 (2015) (cit. on pp. 108, 110).
- [273] M. Parrinello, and A. Rahman, "Crystal structure and pair potentials: a molecular-dynamics study", *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **45**, 1196–1199 (1980) (cit. on p. 109).
- [274] M. Parrinello, and A. Rahman, "Polymorphic transitions in single crystals: a new molecular dynamics method", *J. Appl. Phys.* **52**, 7182–7190 (1981) (cit. on p. 109).
- [275] M. Allen, and D. Tildesley, *Computer simulation of liquids*, Oxford Science Publ (Clarendon Press, 1989) (cit. on p. 109).
- [276] D. Caliste, *V_sim atomic visualization package available online*, http://inac.cea.fr/L_Sim/V_Sim/index.en.html (visited on 03/25/2016) (cit. on p. 109).
- [277] Z. Wang, et al., "Electronic and optical properties of novel carbon allotropes", *Carbon* **101**, 77–85 (2016) (cit. on p. 111).
- [278] Z. Zhao, et al., "Tetragonal allotrope of group 14 elements", *JACS* **134**, 12362–12365 (2012) (cit. on p. 111).
- [279] T. Morishita, M. J. Spencer, S. P. Russo, I. K. Snook, and M. Mikami, "Surface reconstruction of ultrathin silicon nanosheets", *Chem. Phys. Lett.* **506**, 221–225 (2011) (cit. on p. 117).
- [280] Y. Sakai, and A. Oshiyama, "Structural stability and energy-gap modulation through atomic protrusion in freestanding bilayer silicene", *Phys. Rev. B* **91**, 201405 (2015) (cit. on p. 117).
- [281] J. O. Island, et al., "Ultrahigh photoresponse of few-layer tis3 Nanoribbon transistors", *Advanced Optical Materials* **2**, 641–645 (2014) (cit. on p. 121).
- [282] J. O. Island, et al., "Tis3 Transistors with tailored morphology and electrical properties", *Advanced Materials* **27**, 2595–2601 (2015) (cit. on p. 121).
- [283] T. Vogelsang, and K. R. Hofmann, "Electron transport in strained si layers on si_{1-x}Gexsubstrates", *Applied Physics Letters* **63**, 186–188 (1993) (cit. on p. 121).
- [284] J. Welser, J. Hoyt, S. Takagi, and J. Gibbons, "Strain dependence of the performance enhancement in strained-si n-MOSFETs", in *Electron devices meeting, 1994. iedm '94. technical digest., international* (Dec. 1994), pp. 373–376 (cit. on p. 121).

- [285] K. Kaasbjerg, K. S. Thygesen, and K. W. Jacobsen, "Phonon-limited mobility inn-type single-layer MoS₂from first principles", *Physical Review B* **85** (2012) 10.1103/physrevb.85.115317 (cit. on pp. 121, 123).
- [286] W. Zhang, Z. Huang, W. Zhang, and Y. Li, "Two-dimensional semiconductors with possible high room temperature mobility", *Nano Res.* **7**, 1731–1737 (2014) (cit. on p. 121).
- [287] Y. Cai, G. Zhang, and Y.-W. Zhang, "Polarity-reversed robust carrier mobility in monolayer mos₂ Nanoribbons", *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **136**, 6269–6275 (2014) (cit. on pp. 121, 122).
- [288] H. M. Stewart, S. A. Shevlin, C. R. A. Catlow, and Z. X. Guo, "Compressive straining of bilayer phosphorene leads to extraordinary electron mobility at a new conduction band edge", *Nano Lett.* **15**, 2006–2010 (2015) (cit. on p. 122).
- [289] S. Yu, H. D. Xiong, K. Eshun, H. Yuan, and Q. Li, "Phase transition, effective mass and carrier mobility of mos₂ monolayer under tensile strain", *Appl. Surf. Sci.* **325**, 27–32 (2015) (cit. on p. 122).
- [290] M.-Q. Long, L. Tang, D. Wang, L. Wang, and Z. Shuai, "Theoretical predictions of size-dependent carrier mobility and polarity in graphene", *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **131**, 17728–17729 (2009) (cit. on p. 122).
- [291] J. Bardeen, and W. Shockley, "Deformation potentials and mobilities in non-polar crystals", *Phys. Rev.* **80**, 72–80 (1950) (cit. on p. 122).
- [292] J. Xi, M. Long, L. Tang, D. Wang, and Z. Shuai, "First-principles prediction of charge mobility in carbon and organic nanomaterials", *Nanoscale* **4**, 4348 (2012) (cit. on p. 122).
- [293] J. Qiao, X. Kong, Z.-X. Hu, F. Yang, and W. Ji, "High-mobility transport anisotropy and linear dichroism in few-layer black phosphorus", *Nat. Commun.* **5**, 4475 (2014) (cit. on p. 122).
- [294] J. Dai, and X. C. Zeng, "Titanium trisulfide monolayer: theoretical prediction of a new direct-gap semiconductor with high and anisotropic carrier mobility", *Angewandte Chemie International Edition* **54**, 7572–7576 (2015) (cit. on pp. 122–124, 126, 127).
- [295] J. Kang, H. Sahin, H. D. Ozaydin, R. T. Senger, and F. M. Peeters, "TiS₃nanoribbons: width-independent band gap and strain-tunable electronic properties", *Physical Review B* **92** (2015) 10.1103/physrevb.92.075413 (cit. on pp. 122, 123).
- [296] Y. Jin, X. Li, and J. Yang, "Single layer of mx 3 (m = ti, zr; x = s, se, te): a new platform for nano-electronics and optics", *Phys. Chem. Chem. Phys.* **17**, 18665–18669 (2015) (cit. on p. 123).
- [297] S. Furuseth, L. Brattås, A. Kjekshus, and A. F. Andresen, "On the crystal structures of TiS₃, ZrS₃, ZrSe₃, ZrTe₃, HfS₃, and HfSe₃.", *Acta Chem. Scand.* **29a**, 623–631 (1975) (cit. on p. 123).

- [298] D. W. Oxtoby, H. P. Gillis, and A. Campion, *Principles of modern chemistry*, 7th ed. (Brooks Cole, May 2011) (cit. on p. 125).
- [299] J. Kang, H. Sahin, and F. M. Peeters, “Mechanical properties of monolayer sulphides: a comparative study between mos₂, hfs₂ and tis₃”, *Phys. Chem. Chem. Phys.* **17**, 27742–27749 (2015) (cit. on p. 127).
- [300] D. Çakır, F. M. Peeters, and C. Sevik, “Mechanical and thermal properties of h-mx₂ (m=cr, mo, w; x=o, s, se, te) monolayers: a comparative study”, *Appl. Phys. Lett.* **104**, 203110 (2014) (cit. on p. 127).
- [301] G. Q. Huang, and Z. W. Xing, “Band-gap tunability and dynamical instability in strained monolayer and bilayer phosphorenes”, *J. Phys.: Condens. Matter* **27**, 175006 (2015) (cit. on p. 128).
- [302] R. Biele, et al., “Strain-induced band gap engineering in layered tis₃”, *Nano Research* (2017) 10.1007/s12274-017-1622-3 (cit. on p. 132).
- [303] M. Li, J. Dai, and X. C. Zeng, “Tuning the electronic properties of transition-metal trichalcogenides via tensile strain”, *Nanoscale* **7**, 15385–15391 (2015) (cit. on p. 132).
- [304] A. K. Geim, and I. V. Grigorieva, “Van der waals heterostructures”, *Nature* **499**, 419–425 (2013) (cit. on p. 136).
- [305] Y. Liu, et al., “Van der Waals heterostructures and devices”, *Nat. Rev. Mater.* **1**, 16042 (2016) (cit. on p. 136).
- [306] E. Pomerantseva, and Y. Gogotsi, “Two-dimensional heterostructures for energy storage”, *Nat. Energy* **2**, 17089 (2017) (cit. on p. 136).
- [307] A. Allain, J. Kang, K. Banerjee, and A. Kis, “Electrical contacts to two-dimensional semiconductors”, *Nat. Mater.* **14**, 1195–1205 (2015) (cit. on p. 136).
- [308] D. Jena, K. Banerjee, and G. H. Xing, “2D crystal semiconductors: Intimate contacts”, *Nat. Mater.* **13**, 1076–1078 (2014) (cit. on p. 137).
- [309] M. Chhowalla, D. Voiry, J. Yang, H. S. Shin, and K. P. Loh, “Phase-engineered transition-metal dichalcogenides for energy and electronics”, *MRS Bulletin* **40**, 585–591 (2015) (cit. on p. 137).
- [310] Y. Gong, et al., “Vertical and in-plane heterostructures from WS₂/MoS₂ monolayers”, *Nature Materials* **13**, 1135–1142 (2014) (cit. on p. 137).
- [311] J. Singh, *Physics of semiconductors and their heterostructures*, Electrical engineering series (McGraw-Hill, 1993) (cit. on p. 137).
- [312] G. Agostini, and C. Lamberti, *Characterization of semiconductor heterostructures and nanostructures* (Elsevier Science, 2011) (cit. on p. 137).
- [313] L.-Y. Gan, Q. Zhang, Y. Cheng, and U. Schwingenschlögl, “Two-dimensional ferromagnet/semiconductor transition metal dichalcogenide contacts: p-type Schottky barrier and spin-injection control”, *Phys. Rev. B* **88**, 235310 (2013) (cit. on p. 138).

- [314] N. Wu, et al., "Collective electronic behaviors of laterally heterostructured armchair mos₂-Nbs₂ nanoribbons", *Journal of Applied Physics* **118**, 084306 (2015) (cit. on p. 138).
- [315] A. Di Bartolomeo, "Graphene Schottky diodes: an experimental review of the rectifying graphene/semiconductor heterojunction", *Physics Reports* **606**, 1–58 (2016) (cit. on p. 138).
- [316] K.-A. N. Duerloo, and E. J. Reed, "Structural phase transitions by design in monolayer alloys", *ACS Nano* **10**, 289–297 (2016) (cit. on p. 138).
- [317] Y. Matsuda, W.-Q. Deng, and W. A. Goddard, "Contact resistance for "end-contacted" metal-graphene and metal-nanotube interfaces from quantum mechanics", *The Journal of Physical Chemistry C* **114**, 17845–17850 (2010) (cit. on p. 138).
- [318] J. Kang, W. Liu, D. Sarkar, D. Jena, and K. Banerjee, "Computational study of metal contacts to monolayer transition-metal dichalcogenide semiconductors", *Phys. Rev. X* **4**, 031005 (2014) (cit. on p. 138).
- [319] G. Eda, et al., "Coherent atomic and electronic heterostructures of single-layer mos₂", *ACS Nano* **6**, 7311–7317 (2012) (cit. on pp. 138, 141).
- [320] R. Kappera, et al., "Phase-engineered low-resistance contacts for ultra-thin MoS₂ transistors", *Nature Materials* **13**, 1128–1134 (2014) (cit. on p. 138).
- [321] X. Fan, et al., "Fast and efficient preparation of exfoliated 2H mos₂ Nanosheets by sonication-assisted lithium intercalation and infrared laser-induced 1T to 2H phase reversion", *Nano Letters* **15**, 5956–5960 (2015) (cit. on p. 138).
- [322] C. Huang, et al., "Lateral heterojunctions within monolayer MoSe₂–WSe₂ semiconductors", *Nature Materials* **13**, 1096–1101 (2014) (cit. on p. 138).
- [323] Z. Bai, T. Markussen, and K. S. Thygesen, "Electron transport across a metal/mos\$\$_2\$\$ interface: dependence on contact area and binding distance", *arXiv*, 1–7 (2013) (cit. on p. 138).
- [324] Z. Hu, et al., "Modulating the phase transition between metallic and semiconducting single-layer mos₂ and ws₂ through size effects", *Phys. Chem. Chem. Phys.* **17**, 1099–1105 (2015) (cit. on p. 139).
- [325] G. Sivaraman, et al., "Electronic transport along hybrid MoS₂ monolayers", *The Journal of Physical Chemistry C* **120**, 23389–23396 (2016) (cit. on p. 139).
- [326] M. Brandbyge, J.-L. Mozos, P. Ordejón, J. Taylor, and K. Stokbro, "Density-functional method for nonequilibrium electron transport", *Phys. Rev. B* **65**, 165401 (2002) (cit. on p. 139).
- [327] J. M. Soler, et al., "The siesta method for ab initio order- n materials simulation", *Journal of Physics: Condensed Matter* **14**, 2745 (2002) (cit. on p. 139).

- [328] N. Troullier, and J. L. Martins, "Efficient pseudopotentials for plane-wave calculations", *Phys. Rev. B* **43**, 1993–2006 (1991) (cit. on p. 139).
- [329] F. Ma, et al., "Predicting a new phase (t' [prime or minute][prime or minute]) of two-dimensional transition metal di-chalcogenides and strain-controlled topological phase transition", *Nanoscale* **8**, 4969–4975 (2016) (cit. on pp. 141, 142).
- [330] B. Radisavljevic, A. Radenovic, J. Brivio, V. Giacometti, and A. Kis, "Single-layer mos₂ transistors", *Nature Nanotechnology* **6**, 147–150 (2011) (cit. on p. 142).
- [331] Y.-C. Lin, et al., "Single-layer res₂: two-dimensional semiconductor with tunable in-plane anisotropy", *ACS Nano* **9**, 11249–11257 (2015) (cit. on p. 143).
- [332] M. Kan, et al., "Structures and phase transition of a mos₂ monolayer", *The Journal of Physical Chemistry C* **118**, 1515–1522 (2014) (cit. on pp. 143, 144).
- [333] Y. Katagiri, et al., "Gate-tunable atomically thin lateral mos₂ Schottky junction patterned by electron beam", *Nano Letters* **16**, 3788–3794 (2016) (cit. on p. 144).
- [334] A. Nourbakhsh, et al., "Mos₂ Field-effect transistor with sub-10 nm channel length", *Nano Letters* **16**, 7798–7806 (2016) (cit. on p. 144).
- [335] Q. Tang, and D.-e. Jiang, "Stabilization and band-gap tuning of the 1T-mos₂ monolayer by covalent functionalization", *Chemistry of Materials* **27**, 3743–3748 (2015) (cit. on p. 144).
- [336] S. Tongay, et al., "Monolayer behaviour in bulk ReS₂ due to electronic and vibrational decoupling", *Nature Communications* **5** (2014) 10.1038/ncomms4252 (cit. on p. 145).
- [337] D. Cakir, H. Sahin, and F. M. Peeters, "Doping of rhenium disulfide monolayers: a systematic first principles study", *Phys. Chem. Chem. Phys.* **16**, 16771–16779 (2014) (cit. on p. 145).
- [338] F. Raffone, C. Ataca, J. C. Grossman, and G. Cicero, "Mos₂ enhanced t-phase stabilization and tunability through alloying", *The Journal of Physical Chemistry Letters* **7**, 2304–2309 (2016) (cit. on p. 145).
- [339] T. L. Tan, M.-F. Ng, and G. Eda, "Stable monolayer transition metal dichalcogenide ordered alloys with tunable electronic properties", *The Journal of Physical Chemistry C* **120**, 2501–2508 (2016) (cit. on p. 145).
- [340] Z. Cao, M. Harb, S. Lardhi, and L. Cavallo, "Impact of interfacial defects on the properties of monolayer transition metal dichalcogenide lateral heterojunctions", *The Journal of Physical Chemistry Letters*, 1664–1669 (cit. on p. 149).

- [341] H. Guo, N. Lu, J. Dai, X. Wu, and X. C. Zeng, “Phosphorene nanoribbons, phosphorus nanotubes, and van der waals multilayers”, *J. Phys. Chem. C* **118**, 14051–14059 (2014) (cit. on pp. 152, 153).
- [342] G. G. Tibbetts, “Why are carbon filaments tubular?”, *J. Cryst. Growth* **66**, 632–638 (1984) (cit. on p. 153).
- [343] D. H. Robertson, D. W. Brenner, and J. W. Mintmire, “Energetics of nanoscale graphitic tubules”, *Phys. Rev. B* **45**, 12592–12595 (1992) (cit. on p. 153).
- [344] T. W. Odom, J.-L. Huang, P. Kim, and C. M. Lieber, “Structure and electronic properties of carbon nanotubes”, *J. Phys. Chem. B* **104**, 2794–2809 (2000) (cit. on p. 161).

List of Publications

Published

- [P1] A. Yimamu, S. Beysen, D. Peng, and Y. Aierken, "Mixed-solvent thermal synthesis and magnetic properties of flower-like microstructured nickel", *Particuology* **10**, 392–396 (2012).
- [P2] Y. Aierken, et al., "Portlandite crystal: bulk, bilayer, and monolayer structures", *Phys. Rev. B* **91**, 245413 (2015) (cit. on p. 93).
- [P3] Y. Aierken, D. Çakır, C. Sevik, and F. M. Peeters, "Thermal properties of black and blue phosphorenes from a first-principles quasiharmonic approach", *Phys. Rev. B* **92**, 081408 (2015) (cit. on pp. 51, 53).
- [P4] Y. Aierken, O. Leenaerts, and F. M. Peeters, "Defect-induced faceted blue phosphorene nanotubes", *Phys. Rev. B* **92**, 104104 (2015) (cit. on p. 149).
- [P5] M. M. Alyörük, Y. Aierken, D. Çakır, F. M. Peeters, and C. Sevik, "Promising piezoelectric performance of single layer transition-metal dichalcogenides and dioxides", *The Journal of Physical Chemistry C* **119**, 23231–23237 (2015) (cit. on p. 60).
- [P6] Y. Aierken, D. Çakır, and F. M. Peeters, "Strain enhancement of acoustic phonon limited mobility in monolayer tis3", *Phys. Chem. Chem. Phys.* **18**, 14434–14441 (2016) (cit. on p. 121).
- [P7] Y. Aierken, O. Leenaerts, and F. M. Peeters, "A first-principles study of stable few-layer penta-silicene", *Phys. Chem. Chem. Phys.* **18**, 18486–18492 (2016) (cit. on p. 108).

- [P8] Y. Aierken, O. Leenaerts, and F. M. Peeters, “Intrinsic magnetism in penta-hexa-graphene: a first-principles study”, *Phys. Rev. B* **94**, 155410 (2016) (cit. on p. [71](#)).

Under Review

- [P9] Y. Aierken, C. Sevik, O. Gülsen, F. M. Peeters, and D. Çakır, “In pursuit of barrierless transition metal dichalcogenides lateral heterojunctions”, submitted to PRB (cit. on p. [136](#)).
- [P10] Y. Aierken, C. Sevik, O. Gülsen, F. M. Peeters, and D. Çakır, “A first principles study of stacking and lithium atom intercalation in mxenes/graphene heterostructures”, submitted to Journal of Materials Chemistry A (cit. on p. [77](#)).

Curriculum vitae

YIERPAN AIERKEN



PERSONAL INFORMATION

ORCID

Date of birth: June 9th 1986
 Place of birth: Xinjiang, China
 Gender: Male
 Nationality: Chinese
 Ethnic group: Uighur

Phone: [+32-0485324566](tel:+320485324566) (Cell)
 E-mail: erpan14ar@gmail.com
 Address: Condensed Matter Theory
 Groenenborgerlaan 171
 2020 Antwerp, Belgium

EDUCATION BACKGROUND

BS	University of Science and Technology Beijing, P. R. China	Sept. 2006 - July 2010
	School of Materials Science and Engineering. Bachelor Degree in Materials Physics.	
MS	University of Camerino, Italy	Oct. 2010 - April 2013
	Department of Physics. Master Degree in Physics.	
PhD	University of Antwerp, Belgium	Dec. 2013 - Until now
	Condensed matter theory group, Department of Physics. PhD in Physics (Expected Dec. 2017).	

THESES

Bachelor thesis

Title: A study on the anisotropies of Cobalt-based Thin Films in high performance magnetic sensor.
 Supervisor: Professor HaiCheng Wang

Master thesis

Title: Effect of temperature on correlation in strong correlated two-dimensional quantum electron liquid.
 Supervisor: Professor David Neilson

PhD thesis

Title: First-principles study of novel two-dimensional crystals and their properties.
 Supervisor: Professor Francois Peeters

PUBLICATIONS

1. A. Yimamu, S. Beysen, D. Peng, and **Y. Aierken**: " Mixed-solvent thermal synthesis and magnetic properties of flower-like microstructured nickel ", [Particuology 10, 392–396 \(2012\)](#).
2. **Y. Aierken**, H. Sahin, F. Iyikanat, S. Horzum, A. Suslu, B. Chen, R. T. Senger, S. Tongay, and F. M. Peeters: " Portlandite crystal: Bulk, bilayer, and monolayer structures ", [Phys. Rev. B 91, 245413 \(2015\)](#).
3. **Y. Aierken**, D. Çakır, C. Sevik, and F. M. Peeters: "Thermal properties of black and blue phosphorenes from a first-principles quasiharmonic approach", [Phys. Rev. B 92, 081408\(R\) \(2015\)](#).
4. **Y. Aierken**, O. Leenaerts, and F. M. Peeters: "Defect-induced faceted blue phosphorene nanotubes", [Phys. Rev. B 92, 104104 \(2015\)](#).
5. M. M. Alyörük, **Y. Aierken**, D. Çakır, F. M. Peeters, and C. Sevik: "Promising Piezoelectric Performance of Single Layer Transition-Metal Dichalcogenides and Dioxides", [J. Phys. Chem. C 119, 23231-23237 \(2015\)](#).
6. **Y. Aierken**, D. Çakır, and F. M. Peeters: "Strain enhancement of acoustic phonon limited mobility in monolayer TiS3", [Phys. Chem. Chem. Phys. 18, 14434-14441 \(2016\)](#).
7. **Y. Aierken**, O. Leenaerts, and F. M. Peeters: "A first-principles study of stable few-layer pentasilicene", [Phys. Chem. Chem. Phys. 18, 18486-18492 \(2016\)](#).

-
8. **Y. Aierken**, O. Leenaerts, and F. M. Peeters: "Intrinsic magnetism in penta-hexa-graphene: A first-principles study", [Phys. Rev. B 94, 155410 \(2016\)](#).

UNDER REVIEW

9. **Y. Aierken**, D. Çakır, and F. M. Peeters: "Impact of doping on the electrical transport properties of transition metal dichalcogenides lateral heterojunctions" (submitted to nanoscale) (2017)
10. **Y. Aierken**, O. Leenaerts, and F. M. Peeters: "Edge-decoration of graphene nanoribbon with Nitrogens – A first principles study" (finalizing) (2017)
11. **Y. Aierken**, D. Çakır, and F. M. Peeters: "First principles study of Lithium atom intercalation in MXenes/graphene heterostructures" (finalizing) (2017)

CONFERENCE AND SCHOOLS

- 45th IFF Spring School: Computing Solids: “ Models, *ab initio* methods and supercomputing ”, Jülich, Germany, March 2014.
- **Y. Aierken**, O. Leenaerts, and F. M. Peeters: "Defect-induced faceted blue phosphorene nanotubes" poster presentations on:
 - Hands-on workshop density-functional theory and beyond: “ First-principles simulations of molecules and materials ”, Berlin, Germany, July 2015.
 - Psi-k 2015 Conference: “ *ab initio* (from the electronic structure) calculations processes in materials ”, San Sebastian, Spain, September 2015.

LANGUAGES

English (good), Mandarin (native), Uighur (mother tongue)

COMPUTER SKILLS

Fortran, Python, Mathematica, GitHub, Latex, Linux, OS X, Windows

Simulation packages: VASP, Quantum espresso, Siesta (Transiesta), Phonopy, Lammps, Atomic Simulation Environment, QuantumWise, Material studio. AiiDA high throughput computations

HONORS AND AWARDS

- Academic Progress Award 2005
- Outstanding Self-financed Students Award from Xinjiang Province, China 2012, 2014-2015
- Master Students Scholarship (borsa di studio) 2010-2013
- FWO Grant for participation in an international workshop or course 2015
- FWO Grant for participation in an international conference 2015

OTHER ACTIVITIES AND INTERESTS

- The Champion band of the Outstanding Star Music Competition on campus. 2006
- Outstanding Performance Prize in YAMAHA Asian Beat Music competition. 2008
- The Champion team of the College Basketball Tournament. 2008